

**Elementary**

**Student's Book**

# New Headway

## English Course

Liz and John Soars



**OXFORD**  
UNIVERSITY PRESS

# CONTENTS

Unit	Grammar	Vocabulary
1 Hello everybody! p6	<b>Verb to be</b> <i>am/is/are</i> <i>I'm from Germany.</i> <i>He's a doctor.</i> p6, p9 <b>Possessive adjectives</b> <i>my, your, his, her</i> p6, p7	<b>Countries</b> <i>Mexico, Japan</i> p7, p8 Using a bilingual dictionary p10 <b>Everyday objects</b> <i>a key, a newspaper</i> p10 <b>Plural nouns</b> <i>bags, apples</i> p10
2 Meeting people p12	<b>Verb to be</b> <b>Questions and negatives</b> <i>What's her first name?</i> p12 <i>She isn't married.</i> p13 <b>Negatives and short answers</b> <i>No, she isn't.</i> p12 <b>Possessive 's</b> <i>Patrick's daughter</i> p14	<b>The family</b> <i>mother, uncle</i> p14–15 <b>Opposite adjectives</b> <i>old – young</i> p16 <b>Food and drink</b> <i>hamburger and chips</i> <i>tea, coffee</i> p18
3 The world of work p20	<b>Present Simple 1</b> <i>he/she/it</i> p20 <i>He works 16 hours a day.</i> p20 <b>Questions and negatives</b> <i>Does he speak French? No, he doesn't.</i> p22	<b>Verbs</b> <i>help, make, serve</i> p24 <b>Jobs</b> <i>A pilot flies planes.</i> p26
4 Take it easy! p28	<b>Present Simple 2</b> <i>I/you/we/they</i> <i>I go to the gym.</i> <i>We don't go out on Friday evenings.</i> <i>Why do you like your job?</i> p29	<b>Verbs</b> <i>relax, eat out, start</i> p29 <b>Leisure activities</b> <i>dancing, skiing</i> p34

## Stop and check 1 Teacher's Book p138

5 Where do you live? p36	<b>There is/are</b> <i>There's a book on the table.</i> p36 <b>How many ... ?</b> <i>How many books are there?</i> p36 <b>Prepositions of place</b> <i>in front of the fire</i> p36 <b>some and any</b> <i>There are some cups.</i> <i>There aren't any plates.</i> p38 <b>this, that, these, those</b> <i>This is the kitchen.</i> <i>What's in these cupboards?</i> p38	<b>Rooms</b> <i>living room, kitchen</i> p36 <b>Household goods</b> <i>armchair, lamp</i> <i>cupboard, washing machine</i> p36 <b>What's in your bag?</b> <i>letter, bus ticket, mobile phone</i> p39 <b>Parts of a plane</b> <i>cockpit, steps</i> p40 <b>Places</b> <i>cinema, pub</i> p43
6 Can you speak English? p44	<b>can/can't</b> <i>I can ski really well.</i> <i>She can't speak Japanese.</i> p44 <b>was/were</b> <i>Where were you last night?</i> p46 <b>could</b> <i>I could swim when I was five.</i> p46 <b>was born</b> <i>He was born in London.</i> p47	<b>Countries and languages</b> <i>Italy, Italian</i> p44 <b>Verbs</b> <i>translate, check, laugh</i> p45 <b>Words that sound the same</b> <i>I, eye; no, know</i> p50
7 Then and now p52	<b>Past Simple (1)</b> <b>Regular verbs</b> <i>She started work when she was eight.</i> p52 <b>Irregular verbs</b> <i>He left school in 1994.</i> p54 <b>Time expressions</b> <i>last night</i> <i>yesterday morning</i> p55	<b>Verbs</b> <i>earn, marry, die</i> p53 <b>Verbs</b> <i>begin, leave, become</i> p54 <b>Spelling and silent letters</b> <i>bomb, listen</i> p58

## Skills work

### Reading and writing

Introducing yourself p9

### Listening and speaking

The alphabet song p10

## Everyday English

### Hello and goodbye

Telephone numbers p11

How are you?

See you this evening! p11

## Writing (in the Workbook)

### Reading and listening

A letter from America p16

### In a café

Prices p18

Can I have ...?

How much is it? p19

### Reading

Seumas McSporran – the man with  
thirteen jobs p24

### Listening and speaking

Seumas's day p25

### What time is it?

It's quarter past five.

It's about six o'clock. p27

### Personal pronouns and possessive adjectives

I, me, my WB p20

Rewriting a text WB p20

### Speaking

A questionnaire – how do you live? p30

### Reading and listening

Three people talk about  
their favourite season p32

### Speaking

What's your favourite season? p33

Leisure activities p34

### Social expressions

I'm sorry.

Excuse me?

Pardon? p35

### An informal letter

A letter to a penfriend WB p25

### Speaking and listening

What are the differences between the two  
pictures? p37

### Reading and speaking

At home on a plane p40

### Listening and speaking

Homes around the world p42

### Directions 1

Is there a post office near here?

Yes, it's over there. p43

### Linking words

and, so, but, because WB p31

Describing where you live WB p31

### Speaking

Questionnaire - what can you do? p45

### Reading and speaking

Super Kids p48

### On the phone

Directory Enquiries p50

Can I speak to Jo, please?

I'll just get her. p51

### Formal letters 1

A letter of application for a job WB p36

### Speaking

What did you do at the end of the 20th  
century? p54

When did it happen? p55

### Reading and speaking

Two famous firsts:

George Washington and Margaret Thatcher  
p56

### Special occasions

Thanksgiving

Happy birthday! p58

### Writing a paragraph describing a holiday

WB p40

Unit	Grammar	Vocabulary
8 How long ago? p60	<b>Past Simple (2)</b> <b>Negatives and ago</b> <i>People didn't watch TV a hundred years ago.</i> p61 <b>Time expressions</b> <i>in 1994, on Saturday, at seven o'clock</i> p63	Which word is different? <i>apple, chicken, banana</i> p63 Phonetic symbols <i>/'resəpi/</i> p63 Relationships <i>fall in love, get engaged</i> p64
<b>Stop and check 2 Teacher's Book p140</b>		
9 Food you like! p66	<b>Count and uncount nouns</b> <i>apples, apple juice</i> p66 <b>Do you like ... ?/Would you like ... ?</b> <i>Do you like beer? Would you like some now?</i> p67 <b>a and some</b> <i>a cake, some cake</i> p68 <b>much and many</b> <i>There isn't much milk. There aren't many eggs.</i> p69	Food and drink <i>yoghurt, chips beer, apple juice</i> p66 <i>chopsticks</i> p71 Shops and shopping <i>a book of stamps some milk</i> p69
10 Bigger and better! p74	<b>Comparatives and superlatives</b> <i>The country is cheaper than the city.</i> p74 <i>Claridge's is the most expensive hotel.</i> p76 <b>have got</b> <i>London's got a lot of parks. I haven't got much money.</i> p75	City and country adjectives <i>dirty, noisy exciting, safe</i> p74 City and country nouns <i>wood, museum</i> p80
11 Looking good! p82	<b>Present Continuous</b> <i>I'm wearing jeans. Who is smiling?</i> p82 <b>Whose is it?</b> <i>Whose is the bike?</i> p84 <b>Possessive pronouns</b> <i>mine, yours, hers</i> p84	Clothes <i>hat, coat, shirt</i> p82 Describing people <i>fair hair, blue eyes</i> p82 Words that rhyme <i>red, said; laugh, half</i> p88 Phonetic symbols <i>vowels and diphthongs</i> p88 Tongue twisters p88
12 Life's an adventure p90	<b>going to</b> <i>I'm going to be a ballet dancer.</i> p90 <b>Infinitive of purpose</b> <i>I'm going to Holland to see the tulips.</i> p92	Verbs <i>sneeze, jump, fall</i> p92 The weather <i>sunny, cloudy What's the weather like?</i> p96
<b>Stop and check 3 Teacher's Book p142</b>		
13 How terribly clever! p98	<b>Question forms</b> <i>Why ... ? How many ... ? How much ... ? Which ... ?</i> p98 <b>Adverbs and adjectives</b> <i>quick, quickly, good, well</i> p100	Describing feelings <i>bored, worried</i> 101
14 Have you ever? p106	<b>Present Perfect</b> <b>ever and never</b> <i>Have you ever been to Paris? I've never been to Australia.</i> p106 <b>yet and just</b> <i>We haven't been there yet. They've just had a boat ride.</i> p109 <b>Present Perfect and Past Simple</b> <i>Maria's been to Berlin. She went there two years ago.</i> p107	Past participles <i>cooked, eaten, made</i> p107 At the airport <i>departure lounge check in</i> p113
<b>Stop and check 4 Teacher's Book p144</b>		
<a href="#">Tapescripts p114</a>		<a href="#">Grammar Reference p124</a>
<a href="#">Word list p135</a>		

## Skills work

### Reading and listening

Three inventors p62

### Speaking

Incredible information p62

### Listening and speaking

How did you two meet? p64

## Everyday English

### What's the date?

*the fourth of July* p65

## Writing (in the Workbook)

### Linking words

*because, when, until* WB p47

Describing an old friend WB p47

### Listening and speaking

My favourite food p72

### Reading and speaking

Food around the world

Meals in your country p70

### Polite requests

*Could you pass the salt?*

*Could I have a glass of water?*

*Can you give me the recipe?*

*Can I see the menu?* p73

### Formal letters 2

A letter to a hotel WB p53

### Speaking

I've got more than you! p76

### Reading and speaking

Three musical cities –

New Orleans, Vienna, Liverpool

Talking about your town p78

### Directions 2

*out of the garage*

*over the bridge* p81

### Linking words

*which, where* WB p58

Writing about your capital city WB p58

### Listening and speaking

Who's at the party? p84

A song – *What a wonderful world!* p86

### In a clothes shop

*What colour are you looking for?*

*Can I try it on?* p89

### Linking words

*although, but* WB p64

Describing people

WB p64

### Reading and speaking

Dangerous sports

Interviews with people who do dangerous sports p94

### Making suggestions

*What shall we do today?*

*Let's go to the beach!* p97

### Writing a postcard

WB p70

### Speaking and listening

Noises in the night p100

### Reading and listening

A story in a story

The tale of horribly good Bertha p104

### Catching a train

*A return ticket, please.* p105

### Adverbs

*happy, happily* WB p75

Writing a story

*Once upon a time* WB p75

### Speaking

Things you have done p106

### Reading and speaking

How to live to be 100 p110

### Listening

A song – *Leaving on a jet plane* p112

### At the airport

*check in your luggage*

*go to gate 4* p113

### A thank-you letter

WB p80

# 1

# Hello everybody!

am/is/are · my/your/his/her · Everyday objects · Numbers · Hello and goodbye

## STARTER

- 1 Say your names.

I'm Ali.

I'm Tomas.

- 2 Stand up in alphabetical order and say your names.

I'm Ali.

I'm Birgit.

I'm Tomas.

I'm Zak.



## INTRODUCTIONS

am/is/are, my/your

- 1 **T 1.1** Read and listen.

A Hello. My name's Paula.  
What's your name?

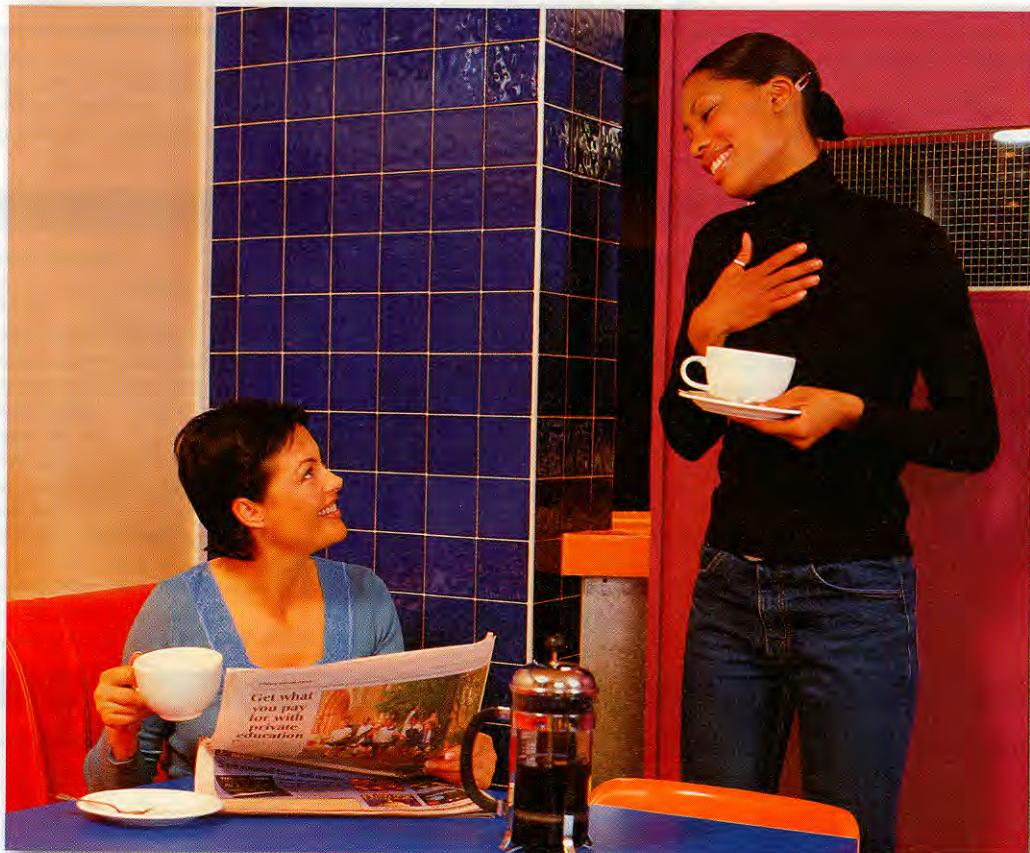
B Rosa.

A Where are you from, Rosa?  
B I'm from Chicago.

- 1 **T 1.1** Listen and repeat.

## GRAMMAR SPOT

name's = name is  
what's = what is  
I'm = I am



**2** Write the conversation.

A Hello. My \_\_\_\_\_ Richard. What's \_\_\_\_\_ name?  
 B Kurt.  
 A \_\_\_\_\_ are you from, Kurt?  
 B \_\_\_\_\_ from Hamburg. Where \_\_\_\_\_ you from?  
 A \_\_\_\_\_ London.

**T 1.2** Listen and check.

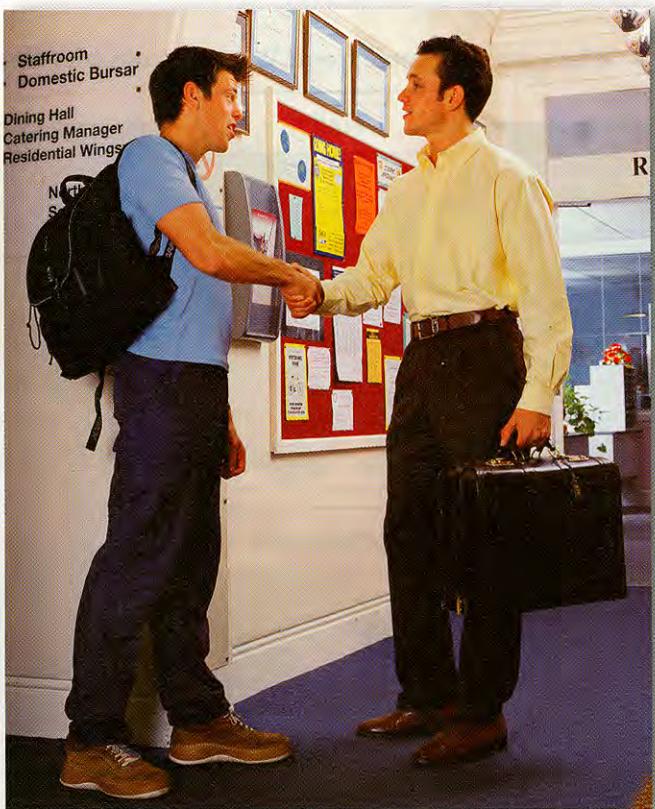
**3** Stand up! Talk to the students in the class.

Hello! My name's \_\_\_\_\_. What's your name?

Maria.

Where are you from, Maria?

I'm from \_\_\_\_\_.



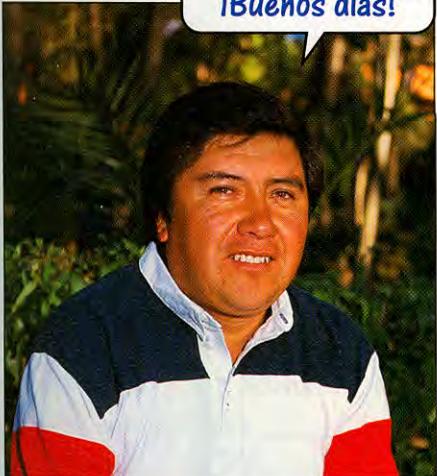
Countries, his/her

**4** **T 1.3** Listen and repeat.

	• •	• •	• • •
the USA	Egypt	Brazil	Mexico
Spain	Russia	Japan	Germany
France	England		Italy
			Hungary

**5** Read about the people.

¡Buenos días!



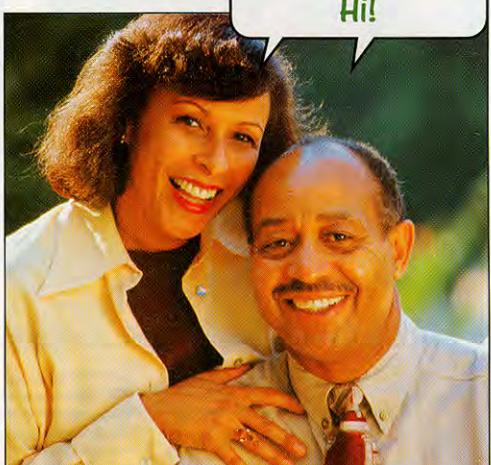
This is Rafael.  
He's from Mexico.

Salem ala goun!



This is Yasmina.  
She's from Egypt.

Hi!



This is Max and Lisa.  
They're from the USA.

**GRAMMAR SPOT**

he's = he is  
she's = she is  
they're = they are

**6** Where are the people from? Write the countries from exercise 4.

Hello!

This is Richard.  
He's from England.

Konnichiwa!

This is Tomoko.  
She's from Japan.

Bom dia!

This is Lena and Miguel.

Buongiorno!

This is Anna.

Privyet!

This is Irina.

Sziasztok!

This is László and Ilona.

iBuenos días!

This is María.

Guten Tag!

This is Kurt.

Bonjour!

This is Pierre.

**7** Ask and answer questions about the people.  
Use *he/his* and *she/her*.

What's his name?  
Where's he from?  
What's her name?  
Where's she from?

Richard.  
England.  
Tomoko.  
Japan.

### GRAMMAR SPOT

Complete the table with *am*, *is*, and *are*.

I	_____	from England.
He	_____	
She	_____	
It	_____	
We	_____	
You	_____	
They	_____	

►►► Grammar Reference 1.1 p124

# PRACTICE

## Talking about you

- 1 Ask and answer questions with a partner about the students in your class.

What's his name?

Where's he from?

- 2 Introduce your partner to the class.

This is Kurt. He's from Hamburg in Germany.

## Listening and pronunciation

- 3 **T 1.4** Listen and tick (✓) the sentence you hear.

- 1  She's from Spain.  
 He's from Spain.
- 2  What's her name?  
 What's his name?
- 3  They're from Brazil.  
 They're in Brazil.
- 4  Where's she from?  
 Where's he from?
- 5  He's a teacher in Italy.  
 His teacher in Italy.

## Check it

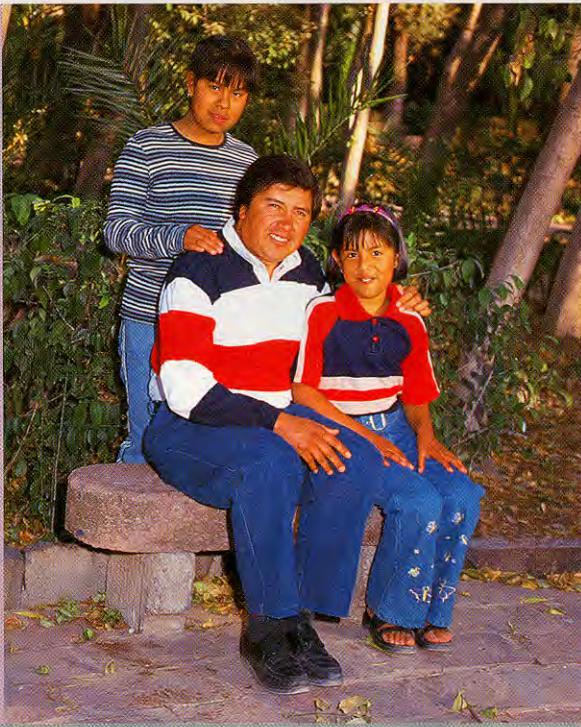
- 4 Complete the sentences with *am*, *is*, *are*, *his*, *her*, or *your*.

- 1 My name is Anna.
- 2 Where are you from?
- 3 I am from Japan.
- 4 'What's your name?' 'My name's Tomoko.'
- 5 Max and Lisa are from Chicago.
- 6 This is my teacher. His name's Richard.
- 7 Where is he from?
- 8 This is my sister. Her name's Emma.

## Reading and writing

- 5 **T 1.5** Listen and read about Rafael.

My name's  
Rafael Ramos  
and I'm a doctor.  
I'm 30. I'm  
married and  
I have two  
children. I live in  
a house in Toluca  
in Mexico. I want  
to learn English  
for my job.



- 6 Complete the text about Yasmina.



My name's  
Yasmina Kamal  
and I'm a student.  
I am 19.  
I'm not married.  
I have one  
sister and  
two brothers.  
I live in a  
flat in Cairo, Egypt.  
I study  
to learn English  
because it's an  
international  
language.

- T 1.6** Listen and check.

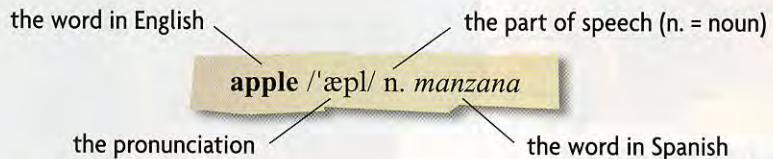
- 7 Write about you. Then read it to the class.

# VOCABULARY AND PRONUNCIATION

## Everyday objects

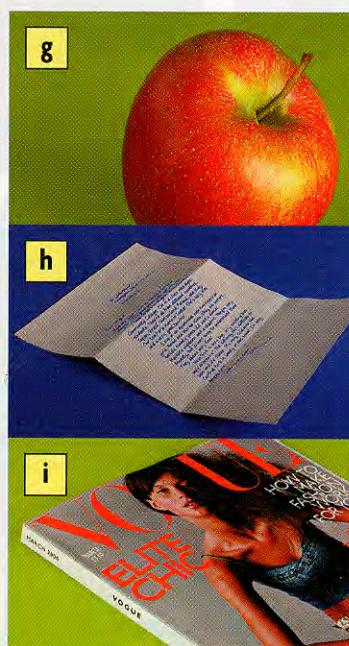
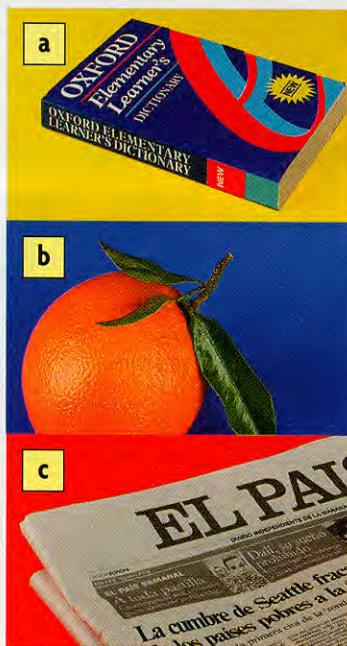
1 **T 1.7** Listen to the alphabet song. Say the alphabet as a class.

2 Look at this extract from an English/Spanish dictionary.



3 Match the words and pictures.

	● ●	● ● ●	● ● ●
a stamp a bag a key	a camera a ticket a postcard a letter an apple an orange	a dictionary a newspaper	a magazine



**T 1.8** Listen and repeat.

4 Ask and answer questions with a partner.

What's a?

It's a dictionary.

How do you spell that?

D, I, C, T, ...

5 Look at the words. What are *a*, *e*, *i*, *o*, and *u*? When is it *a*? When is it *an*?

a bag                    an apple  
a ticket                an orange  
a letter                an English book

6 Look at the plural words.

two stamps    two apples    two dictionaries

Say the plurals of the other words in exercise 3.

► Grammar Reference 1.4 and 1.5 p124

# EVERDAY ENGLISH

## Hello and goodbye

1 Say the numbers 1–20 round the class.

2 **T 1.9** Read and listen to the telephone numbers.

682 947      six eight two      nine four seven  
8944 5033      eight nine double four      five 'oh' double three  
020 7399 7050      'oh' two 'oh'      seven three double nine      seven 'oh' five 'oh'

3 **T 1.10** Listen and write the numbers you hear. Practise them.

4 Ask and answer the question with other students. Write a list.

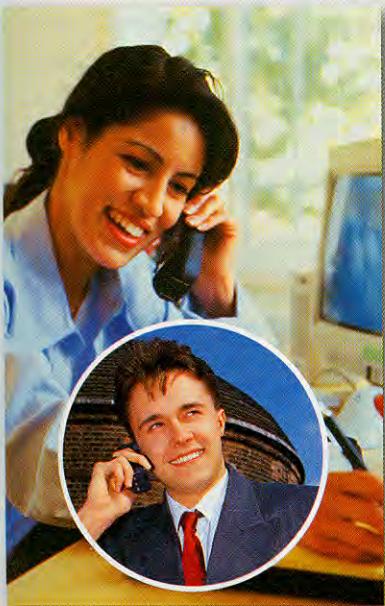
*What's your phone number?*

*It's (020) 7267 5118.*

*Thank you very much.*



5 Write the conversations in the correct order.



1 I'm fine, thank you. And you?  
I'm OK, thanks.  
Hello, Mary. This is Edward.  
How are you?  
Hello, extension 3442.

A \_\_\_\_\_  
B \_\_\_\_\_  
A \_\_\_\_\_  
B \_\_\_\_\_



2 Goodbye, Bianca. Have a nice day.  
Yes, at seven in the cinema.  
Thanks, Marcus. See you this evening!  
Goodbye, Marcus.

A \_\_\_\_\_  
B \_\_\_\_\_  
A \_\_\_\_\_  
B \_\_\_\_\_



3 Not bad, thanks. And you?  
Very well. How are the children?  
Hi, Flora! It's me, Leo. How are you?  
They're fine.  
Hello, 270899.

A \_\_\_\_\_  
B \_\_\_\_\_  
A \_\_\_\_\_  
B \_\_\_\_\_  
A \_\_\_\_\_

**T 1.11** Listen and check.

6 Practise the conversations with other students. Practise again, using your names and numbers.

# 2

# Meeting people

**am/is/are – questions and negatives • Possessive's • Family • Opposites • In a café**

## STARTER



- 1 Count from 1–20 round the class.
- 2 Count in 10s from 10–100 round the class.  
*ten, twenty, thirty... one hundred.*
- 3 How old are you? Ask and answer in groups.

## WHO IS SHE?

### Questions and negatives

- 1 Read Keesha Anderson's identity card.

- 2 Complete the questions.

- 1 What's her surname? Anderson.
- 2    her first name? Keesha.
- 3    she from? London, England.
- 4       job? She's a journalist.
- 5 What's      ? 42, Muswell Hill Road, London N10 3JD.
- 6       phone number? 020 8863 5741.
- 7 How old      ? Twenty-eight.
- 8 Is she   ? No, she isn't.

**T 2.1** Listen and check. Practise the questions and answers.

- 3 Keesha has a brother. Write questions about him. Ask your teacher and complete his card.

*What's his surname?*

*Anderson.*

*What's his first name?*

PERSONAL IDENTITY CARD	
SURNAME	ANDERSON
FIRST NAME	KEESHA
COUNTRY	ENGLAND
JOB	JOURNALIST
ADDRESS	42, MUSWELL HILL ROAD, LONDON N10 3JD
PHONE NUMBER	020 8863 5741
AGE	28
MARRIED?	NO

PERSONAL IDENTITY CARD	
SURNAME	ANDERSON
FIRST NAME	
COUNTRY	
JOB	
ADDRESS	
PHONE NUMBER	
AGE	
MARRIED?	

## PRACTICE

### Negatives and short answers

- 4 **T 2.2** Read and listen. Then listen and repeat.



Ask and answer Yes/No questions about Keesha.

- 1 a doctor? a teacher? a journalist?
- 2 eighteen? twenty-one? twenty-eight?

- 5 Ask and answer questions about Keesha's brother.

- 1 Peter? Daniel? Rudi?
- 2 a journalist? a student? a policeman?
- 3 sixteen? thirty? twenty-one?

#### GRAMMAR SPOT

- 1 Complete the answers to the Yes/No questions.

Is Keesha English?

Yes, she \_\_\_\_.

Is her surname Smith?

No, it \_\_\_\_.

Are you a journalist?

No, I'm \_\_\_\_.

- 2 Look at the negatives.

She **isn't** married.

You **aren't** English.

But: I'm **not** a teacher

~~X~~ I **amn't** a teacher.

► Grammar Reference 2.1 p125

### Who is he?

- 1 **Student A** Look at the identity card from your teacher.  
**Student B** Look at this identity card.

Ask and answer questions to complete the information.

RBS INTERNATIONAL IDENTITY CARD	
SURNAME	PATRICK
FIRST NAME	PATRICK
COUNTRY	
JOB	ACCOUNTANT
ADDRESS	
PHONE NUMBER	1232 4837
AGE	
MARRIED?	YES

- 2 Ask and answer Yes/No questions about Patrick.

- 1 Smith? Jones? Binchey?
- 2 from Italy? from England? from Ireland?
- 3 a policeman? a teacher? an accountant?

### Talking about you

- 3 Ask your teacher some questions.

What's your first name?

Isabel.

Are you married?

No, I'm not.

- 4 Look at the form from your teacher.

Stand up! Ask two students Yes/No questions to complete the form. Answer questions about you.

Carmen, are you a student?

Yes, I am.

Are you from Barcelona?

No, I'm not. I'm from Madrid.

Are you married?

No, I'm not.

Tell the class about one of the students.

Her name's Anna-Maria. She's a student ...

# PATRICK'S FAMILY

## Possessive 's

- 1 Write these words in the correct place.

brother father daughter wife aunt grandmother

	boyfriend	husband		son		uncle	grandfather
	girlfriend		mother		sister		

- 2 **T 2.3** Read about Patrick Binchey and listen. Write the names of the people in the correct place.

This is a photo of **Patrick**, his wife, and his children. His wife's name is Brenda. She's a teacher. His daughter's name is Lara. She's twenty-one and she's a nurse. His son's name is Benny. He's nineteen and he's a student. Lara's boyfriend is a nurse, too. His name is Mick.



- 3 Ask and answer questions about Patrick's family.

*Who's Brenda?*

*She's Patrick's wife.*

### GRAMMAR SPOT

1 Look at 's.

She's a teacher: She's = She is.

His wife's name: His wife's name = her name  
's = possession.

2 Find other examples in the text of possessive 's and 's = is.

►►► Grammar Reference 2.2 p125

## PRACTICE

### You and your family

- 1 Ask your teacher questions about the people in his/her family.

*What's your mother's name?*

*What's your sister's name?*

- 2 Write the names of people in your family. Ask and answer questions with a partner.



Ask a partner questions about his/her family.

*Who's Juan?*

*He's my brother.*

*Who's Silvia?*

*She's my aunt.  
She's my mother's sister.*

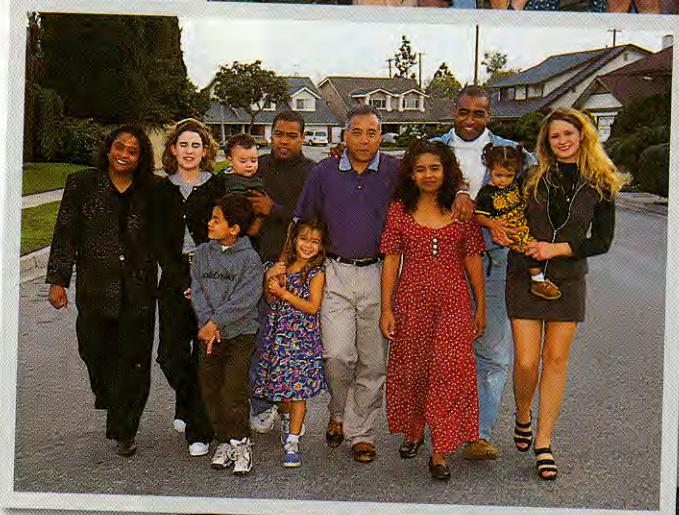
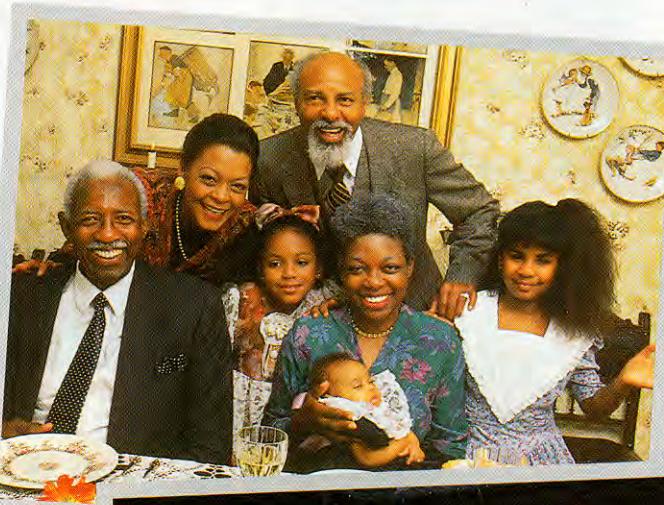
- 3 Make true sentences with the verb *to be*.

- 1 I 'm not \_\_\_\_\_ at home.
- 2 We \_\_\_\_\_ in class.
- 3 It \_\_\_\_\_ Monday today.
- 4 My teacher's name \_\_\_\_\_ John.
- 5 My mother and father \_\_\_\_\_ at work.
- 6 I \_\_\_\_\_ married.
- 7 My grandmother \_\_\_\_\_ seventy-five years old.
- 8 Marcus and Carlos \_\_\_\_\_ my brothers.
- 9 We \_\_\_\_\_ in the coffee bar. We \_\_\_\_\_ in the classroom.

### Check it

- 4 Tick (✓) the correct sentence.

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1 <input type="checkbox"/> I'm a doctor.                 | 5 <input type="checkbox"/> She married.                  |
| <input type="checkbox"/> I'm doctor.                     | <input type="checkbox"/> She's married.                  |
| 2 <input type="checkbox"/> I have twenty-nine years old. | 6 <input type="checkbox"/> I'm an uncle.                 |
| <input type="checkbox"/> I am twenty-nine years old.     | <input type="checkbox"/> I'm a uncle.                    |
| 3 <input type="checkbox"/> I no married.                 | 7 <input type="checkbox"/> I have two brother.           |
| <input type="checkbox"/> I'm not married.                | <input type="checkbox"/> I have two brothers.            |
| 4 <input type="checkbox"/> My sister's name is Lara.     | 8 <input type="checkbox"/> Peter's the son of my sister. |
| <input type="checkbox"/> My sisters name is Lara.        | <input type="checkbox"/> Peter's my sister's son.        |



## VOCABULARY

### Opposites

- 1 Match the adjectives with their opposites.

old	horrible
big	old
new	young
lovely	difficult
easy	cheap
hot	cold
expensive	slow
fast	small

- 2 Write about the pictures, using the adjectives.



1 He's old.

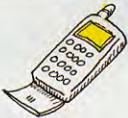


She's young.

$$2+2=4$$

$$2x^2+2x-8$$

2



3



4



5



6



7



8

- T 2.4 Listen and check. Practise saying the sentences.

## READING AND LISTENING

### A letter from America

- 1 T 2.5 Dorita is an English student at a school in Queens, New York City. Read and listen to her letter to Miguel, her brother in Argentina.

- 2 Match each photograph with part of the letter.

- 3 Correct the false (X) sentences.

- 1 Dorita is from Argentina. ✓
- 2 She's in Miami. X No, she isn't. She's in New York.
- 3 Dorita's happy in New York.
- 4 She's on holiday.
- 5 It's a very big class.
- 6 The students in her class are all from South America.
- 7 Annie and Marnie are both students.
- 8 The subway is easy to use.

- 4 Write the questions about Dorita's letter.

- 1 Where's Dorita from? ?  
Argentina.

- 2 \_\_\_\_\_ ?  
Japan, Brazil, Switzerland, Poland, and Italy.

- 3 \_\_\_\_\_ ?  
Isabel.

- 4 \_\_\_\_\_ ?  
They are sisters. They live with Dorita.

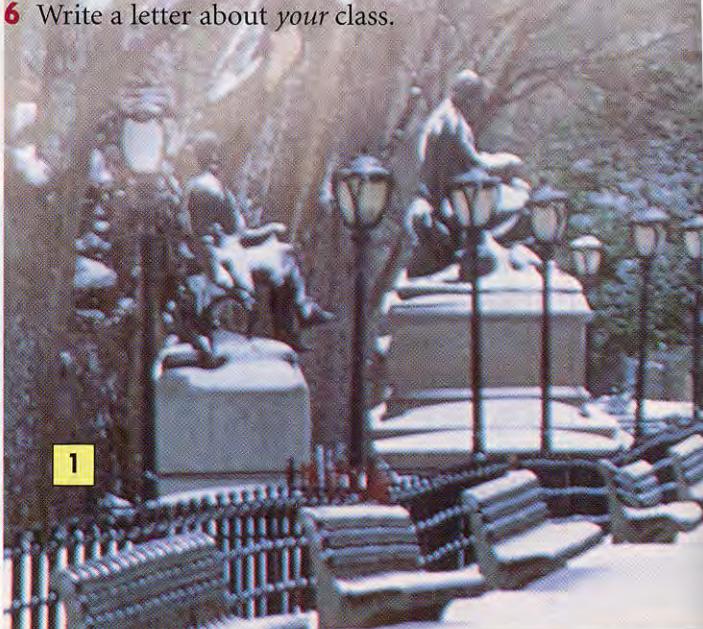
- 5 \_\_\_\_\_ ?  
Annie's twenty and Marnie's eighteen.

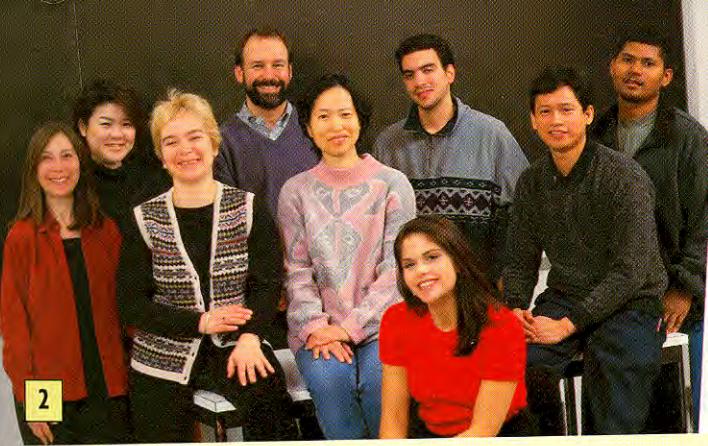
- 6 \_\_\_\_\_ New York ?  
Yes, it is.

- 5 T 2.6 Listen to three conversations. Where is Dorita? Who is she with?

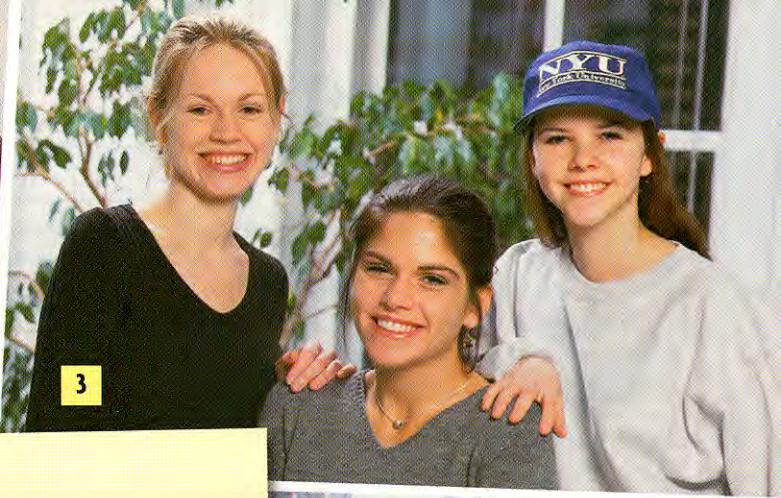
### Writing

- 6 Write a letter about your class.





2



3

41 46th Street  
Sunnyside, New York 11104  
February 12

Dear Miguel,

How are you? I'm fine. Here's a letter in English. It's good practice for you and me!

I have classes in English at La Guardia Community College. I'm in a class with eight students. They're all from different countries: Japan, Brazil, Switzerland, Poland, and Italy. Our teacher's name is Isabel. She's very nice and a very good teacher.

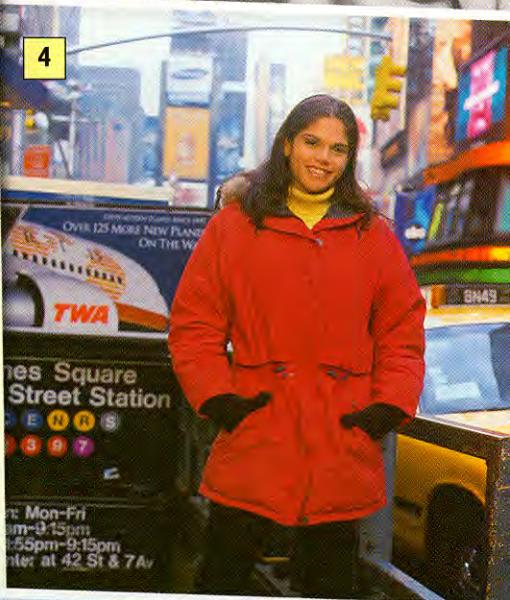
I live in an apartment with two American girls, Annie and Marnie Kass. They are sisters. Annie's twenty years old and a dancer.

Marnie's eighteen and a student. They're very friendly, but it isn't easy to understand them. They speak very fast!

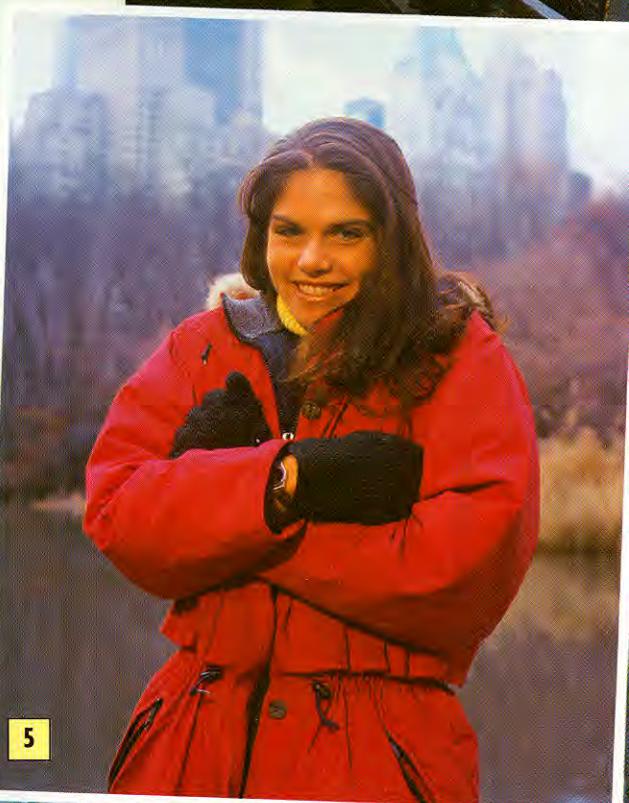
New York is very big, very exciting but very expensive! The subway isn't difficult to use and it's cheap. It's very cold now but Central Park is lovely in the snow. I'm very happy here.

Write to me soon.

Love,  
Dorita



4



5

# EVERYDAY ENGLISH

## In a café

- 1 1 **T 2.7** Read and listen to the prices.

£1.00 one pound  
£5.00 five pounds

50p fifty p /pi:/  
£7.50 seven pounds fifty

£10.75 ten pounds seventy-five

- 2 **T 2.8** Write the prices you hear. Practise saying them.

- 2 Read the menu. Match the food and pictures.

## Baker Street Snack Bar

### Menu

Hamburger & chips	£3.50
Chicken & chips	£3.90
Tuna & egg salad	£4.25
Pizza	£3.75
Ice-cream	£1.50
Chocolate cake	£1.75
Coffee	£1.00
Tea	60p
Orange juice	90p
Mineral water	70p



- 3 **T 2.9** Listen and repeat. Then ask and answer questions with a partner.

*How much is a hamburger and chips?*

*Three pounds fifty.*

*How much is a hamburger and chips and an orange juice?*

*Four pounds forty.*



- 4 **T 2.10** Listen and complete the conversations.



A Good morning.

B Good \_\_\_\_\_. Can I have \_\_\_\_\_, please?

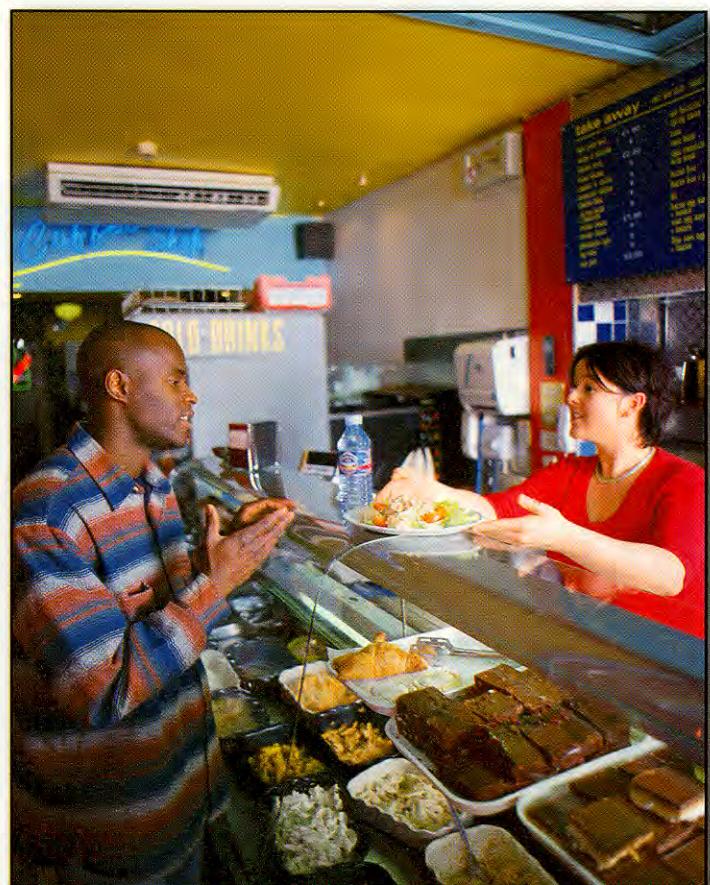
A Here you are. Anything else?

B No, thanks.

A \_\_\_\_\_ p, please.

B Thanks.

A Thank you.



A Hi. Can I help?

B Yes. Can I have a \_\_\_\_\_ salad, please?

A Anything to drink?

B Yeah. A \_\_\_\_\_, please.

A OK. Here you are.

B \_\_\_\_\_ is that?

A \_\_\_\_\_ pounds \_\_\_\_\_, please.

B Thanks.

- 5 Practise the conversations with your partner.  
Make more conversations.

# 3

# The world of work

Present Simple 1 – *he/she/it* • Questions and negatives • Jobs • What time is it?

## STARTER



What are the jobs of the people in your family? Tell the class.

*My father is a doctor.*

*My mother is a ...*

*My brother ...*

## THREE JOBS

Present Simple *he/she/it*

1 T 3.1 Listen and read about Ali and Bob.



**Ali** is a scientist. She comes from Cambridge in England but now she lives in Switzerland. She works three days a week at the Institute of Molecular Biology in Geneva. She speaks three languages: English, French, and German. She's married and has a daughter. She likes skiing in winter and going for walks in summer.

## Alison Hauser



**Bob** is a doctor. He's English but now he lives in Australia in the small town of Alice Springs. He isn't an ordinary doctor, he's a *flying* doctor. Every day, from 8 a.m. to 10 a.m. he speaks to people on his radio, then he flies to help them. He works 16 hours a day non-stop but he loves his job. He isn't married. He has no free time.

## Bob Nelson

### GRAMMAR SPOT

- Underline all the verbs in the texts. *is comes*
- What is the last letter of these verbs?
- Practise saying the verbs. Read the texts aloud.

2 Complete the sentences about Ali and Bob.

- 1 She's a scientist. He 's a doctor.
- 2 Alison comes from England. Bob \_\_\_\_\_ England, too.
- 3 She lives in a big city, but he \_\_\_\_\_ in a \_\_\_\_\_ town.
- 4 She \_\_\_\_\_ three days \_\_\_\_\_ week. He \_\_\_\_\_ 16 hours a day \_\_\_\_\_ .
- 5 He \_\_\_\_\_ to sick people on his radio. She \_\_\_\_\_ three languages.
- 6 She loves her job and he \_\_\_\_\_ , too.
- 7 She \_\_\_\_\_ daughter. He \_\_\_\_\_ married.
- 8 She \_\_\_\_\_ skiing and going \_\_\_\_\_ walks in her free time. He never \_\_\_\_\_ free time.

**T 3.2** Listen and check.

## PRACTICE

### Talking about people

1 Read the information about Philippe.

**Philippe Ballon**

<b>Job</b>	a barman
<b>Country</b>	France
<b>Town</b>	Paris
<b>Place of work</b>	in the centre of Paris
<b>Languages</b>	French, a little English
<b>Married?</b>	no
<b>Family</b>	a dog (!)
<b>Free time</b>	walking his dog, playing football

2 Talk about Philippe.

Philippe is a barman.

He comes from France and he ... Paris.

He works ...

He isn't ...

He speaks French and ...

He has ...

He likes ...

3 Write about a friend or a relative. Talk to a partner about him/her.

My friend Anna is a student. She lives in ...

# WHAT DOES SHE DO?

## Questions and negatives

- 1 **T 3.3** Read and listen. Complete the answers. Practise the questions and answers.

Where does Alison come from? Cambridge, \_\_\_\_ England.

What does she do? She's \_\_\_\_ scientist.

Does she speak French? \_\_\_\_ , she does.

Does she speak Spanish? \_\_\_\_ , she doesn't.

### GRAMMAR SPOT

- 1 What does she/he do? = What's her/his job?
- 2 Complete these sentences with the correct form of *come*.

#### Positive

She \_\_\_\_\_ from England.

#### Negative

She \_\_\_\_\_ from America.

#### Question

Where \_\_\_\_\_ she \_\_\_\_\_ from?

- 3 Notice the pronunciation of *does* and *doesn't*.  
/dəz/                    /dʌz/                    /'dʌznt/  
Does he speak French? Yes he **does**./No, he **doesn't**.

►► Grammar Reference 3.1 p.126

- 2 Complete the questions and answers.

- 1 Where \_\_\_\_\_ Bob \_\_\_\_\_ from?  
England.
- 2 What \_\_\_\_\_ he \_\_\_\_\_ ?  
He's a doctor.
- 3 \_\_\_\_\_ he fly to help people?  
Yes, he \_\_\_\_\_ .
- 4 \_\_\_\_\_ he \_\_\_\_\_ French and German?  
No, he \_\_\_\_\_ .

**T 3.4** Listen and check.

- 3 Write similar questions about Philippe the barman. Ask and answer with a partner.

Where does Philippe come from?

Paris.

# PRACTICE

## Asking about people

- 1 Read the information about Keiko or Mark.

### Keiko Wilson

Job	an interpreter
Country	Japan
Town	New York
Place of work	at the United Nations
Languages	Japanese, English, and French
Family	married to an American, two sons
Free time	skiing

- 2 Talk to a partner.

Keiko's an interpreter. She comes from Japan. She lives ...





## Mark König

Job	a journalist for the BBC
Country	England
Town	Moscow
Place of work	in an office
Languages	English, Russian, and German
Family	married, three daughters
Free time	listening to music

3 Write questions about Keiko or Mark.

- Where/come from?  
**Where does Keiko come from?**
- Where/live?
- What/do?
- Where/work?
- Does he/she speak French/Spanish . . . ?
- What . . . in his/her free time?
- . . . listen to music?
- How many children . . . ?
- . . . a dog?

4 Don't look at the information. Ask and answer questions with your partner.

5 Now ask your partner the same questions about a friend or relative.

## Listening and pronunciation

6 **T 3.5** Listen to the sentences about Philippe, Keiko, and Mark. Correct the wrong sentences.

*Philippe comes from Paris.*

*Yes, that's right.*

*Philippe lives in London.*

*No, he doesn't. He lives in Paris.*

7 **T 3.6** Tick (✓) the sentence you hear.

- 1  He likes his job.  
 She likes her job.
- 2  She loves walking.  
 She loves working.
- 3  He's married.  
 He isn't married.
- 4  Does she have three children?  
 Does he have three children?
- 5  What does he do?  
 Where does he go?

## Check it

8 Tick (✓) the correct sentence.

- 1  She comes from Japan.  
 She come from Japan.
- 2  What he do in his free time?  
 What does he do in his free time?
- 3  Where lives she?  
 Where does she live?
- 4  He isn't married.  
 He doesn't married.

- 5  Does she has two sons?  
 Does she have two sons?
- 6  He doesn't play football.  
 He no plays football.
- 7  She doesn't love Peter.  
 She doesn't loves Peter.
- 8  What's he's address?  
 What's his address?

## READING AND LISTENING

Seumas McSporran – the man with thirteen jobs!

- 1 Seumas McSporran /'seuməs mək'spɔːrən/ comes from Scotland. Look at the photographs of some of the things he does every day.



# The man with thirteen jobs



- 2 Match a sentence with a photograph.

- 1 He **helps** in the shop.
- 2 He **makes** breakfast for the hotel guests.
- 3 He **serves** petrol.
- 4 He **delivers** the beer to the pub.
- 5 He **collects** the post from the boat.
- 6 He **drives** the children to school.
- 7 He **delivers** the letters.
- 8 He **has** a glass of wine.
- 9 He **works** as an undertaker.



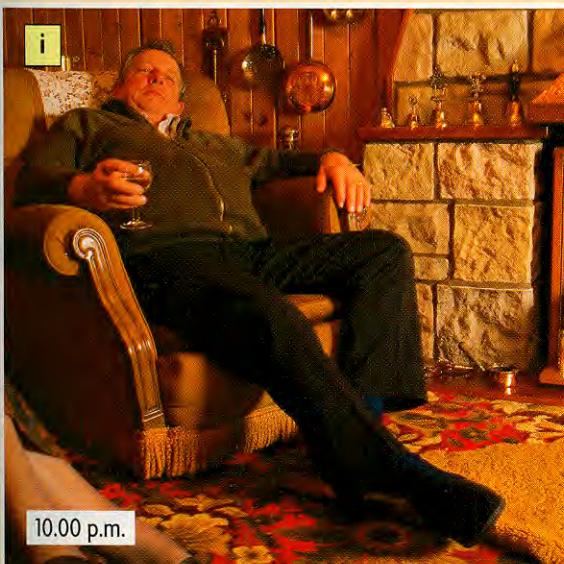
## Seumas McSporran

**S**eumas is a very busy man. He is 60 years old and he has thirteen jobs. He is a postman, a policeman, a fireman, a taxi driver, a school-bus driver, a boatman, an ambulance man, an accountant, a petrol attendant, a barman, and an undertaker. Also, he and his wife, Margaret, have a shop and a small hotel.

Seumas lives and works on the island of Gigha in the west of Scotland. Only 120 people live on Gigha but in summer 150 tourists come by boat every day.

Every weekday Seumas gets up at 6.00 and makes breakfast for the hotel guests. At 8.00 he drives the island's children to school. At 9.00 he collects the post from the boat and delivers it to all the houses on the island. He also delivers the beer to the island's only pub. Then he helps Margaret in the shop.

He says: 'Margaret likes being busy, too. We never have holidays and we don't like watching television. In the evenings Margaret makes supper and I do the accounts. At 10.00 we have a glass of wine and then we go to bed. Perhaps our life isn't very exciting, but we like it.'



**3** Read about Seumas. Answer the questions.

- 1 Where does Seumas live?
- 2 How old is he?
- 3 How many jobs does he have?
- 4 What's his wife's name?
- 5 What does she do?
- 6 How many people live on Gigha?
- 7 How many tourists visit Gigha in summer?
- 8 What does Seumas do in the morning?
- 9 What do he and Margaret do in the evening?

**4** Look at the photos. Ask and answer questions with a partner about times in Seumas's day.

*What does he do at 6 o'clock?*

*He gets up and makes breakfast.*

**5** **T 3.7** Listen to four conversations from Seumas's day. After each one answer these questions.

- 1 Is it morning, afternoon, or evening?
- 2 Who are the people? Where are they?
- 3 What is Seumas's job?

**6** Complete the conversations.

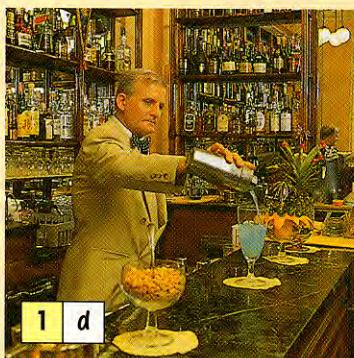
- 1 A Good \_\_\_\_\_. Can I \_\_\_\_\_ two ice-creams, please?  
B Chocolate or vanilla?  
A One chocolate, one vanilla please.  
B That's \_\_\_\_\_. Anything \_\_\_\_?  
A No, thank you.
- 2 A Only \_\_\_\_\_ letters for you this \_\_\_\_\_, Mrs Craig.  
B Thank you very much, Mr McSporran. And \_\_\_\_\_'s Mrs McSporran this \_\_\_\_\_?  
A Oh, she's very well, thank you. She's \_\_\_\_\_ in the shop.
- 3 A A glass of \_\_\_\_\_ before bed, my dear?  
B Oh, yes please.  
A \_\_\_\_\_ you are.  
B Thank you, my dear. I'm very \_\_\_\_\_ this \_\_\_\_\_.
- 4 A Hello, Mr McSporran!  
B Good \_\_\_\_\_, boys and girls. Hurry up, we're late.  
A Can I sit here, Mr McSporran?  
C No, no, I \_\_\_\_\_ to sit there.  
B Be quiet \_\_\_\_\_ of you, and SIT DOWN!

Practise the conversations with your partner.

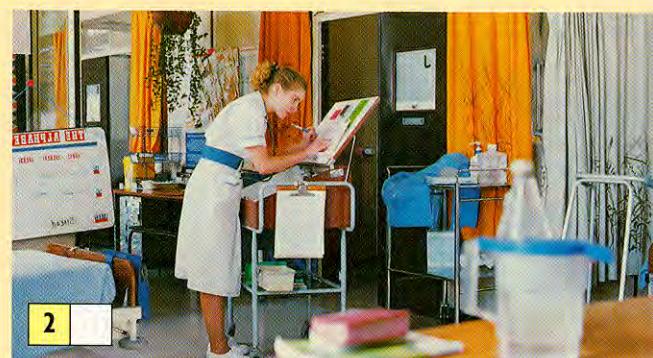
# VOCABULARY AND PRONUNCIATION

## Jobs

- 1 Use your dictionary and match a picture with a job in column A.



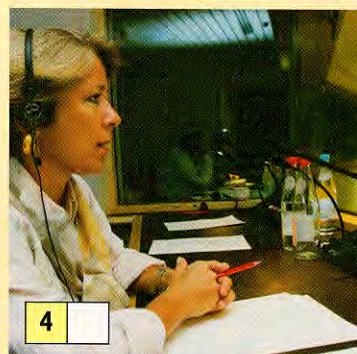
1 d



2



3



4



5



6



7



8

A	B
a A pilot	designs buildings.
b An interpreter	delivers letters.
c A nurse	looks after people in hospital.
d A barman	looks after money.
e An accountant	writes for a newspaper.
f A journalist	translates things.
g A postman	sells things.
h An architect	flies planes.
i A shopkeeper	serves drinks.



9

- 2 Match a job in A with a line in B.

- 3 Look at the phonetic spelling of some of the words. Practise saying them.

1 /nɜ:s/    2 /'peʊsmən/    3 /ə'kaʊntənt/    4 /'ʃɒpki:pə/    5 /'a:kitekt/    6 /'ba:mən/

- 4 Memorize the jobs. Close your books. Ask and answer questions with a partner.

What does a pilot do?

He/She flies planes.

# EVERYDAY ENGLISH

What time is it?

1 Look at the clocks. Write the times. Practise saying them.



It's five o'clock.

It's half past five.



It's quarter past five.

It's quarter to six.



It's five past five.

It's twenty-five past five.



It's twenty to six.

It's ten to six.

T 3.8 Listen and check.

2 Look at the times.



It's about three o'clock.

It's about five o'clock.

What time is it now? What time does the lesson end?

3 T 3.9 Listen and practise the conversations.

## Conversation 1

Excuse me. Can you tell me the time, please?

Yes, of course. It's (about) six o'clock.

Thanks.

## Conversation 2

Excuse me. Can you tell me the time, please?

I'm sorry, I don't know. I don't have a watch.

Never mind.

With a partner, draw clocks on a piece of paper. Make more conversations.

# 4

# Take it easy!

Present Simple 2 – *I/you/we/they* • Leisure activities • Social expressions

## STARTER

- 1 What year is it? What month is it? What day is it today?
- 2 Say the days of the week. Which days are the weekend?

## WEEKDAYS AND WEEKENDS

Present Simple *I/you/we/they*

- 1 Read about Bobbi Brown's weekends. Complete the text with the verbs.

gets up   lives   is   loves   works   doesn't work   interviews   starts



'What's free time?'

says Bobbi Brown.

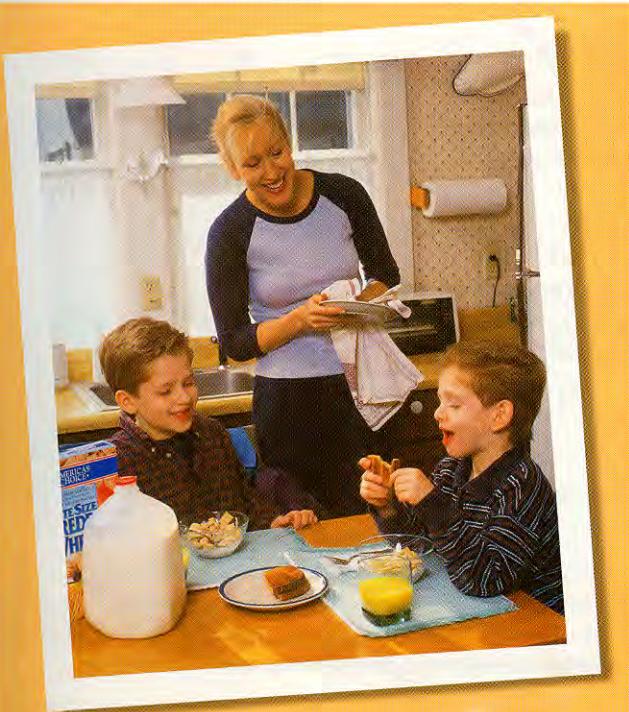


## Bobbi's weekends

Bobbi Brown \_\_\_\_ in New Jersey. She \_\_\_\_ thirty-four and \_\_\_\_ for SKY TV in New York City. But she \_\_\_\_ on weekdays, she only works at weekends. She \_\_\_\_ famous people for an early morning news programme called *The World This Weekend*. On Saturdays and Sundays she \_\_\_\_ at 3.00 in the morning because she \_\_\_\_ work at 6.30! She \_\_\_\_ her job because it is exciting.

## Questions and negatives

- 2 **T 4.1** Now read and listen to what Bobbi says about her weekdays.



**“** My weekends are fast and exciting. My weekdays are fast and domestic! I \_\_\_\_ two sons, Dylan, 7, and Dakota, 5. Every morning I \_\_\_\_ one hour before them, at 6.00, and I \_\_\_\_ to the gym. I \_\_\_\_ home and I \_\_\_\_ breakfast, then I \_\_\_\_ them to school. On Mondays I always \_\_\_\_\_. I \_\_\_\_ all the food for the week. I often \_\_\_\_ dinner in the evenings, but not every day because I don't \_\_\_\_ cooking. Fortunately, my husband, Don, \_\_\_\_ cooking. On Tuesdays and Thursdays I \_\_\_\_ my father. He \_\_\_\_ on the next block. Every afternoon I \_\_\_\_ the kids from school. In the evenings Don and I usually \_\_\_\_\_. but sometimes we \_\_\_\_ friends. We never \_\_\_\_ on Friday evenings because I \_\_\_\_ work so early on Saturdays. **”**

- 3 Complete the text with the correct form of the verbs in the box. Look up new words in your dictionary.

love relax have like go live start come  
visit x2 go shopping pick up go out get up take  
buy make cook

- 4 **T 4.2** Read and listen. Complete Bobbi's answers. Practise the questions and answers.

Where do you work? \_\_\_\_\_ New York.  
Do you like your work? Yes, I \_\_\_\_\_.  
Do you relax at weekends? No, I \_\_\_\_\_.  
Why don't you relax at weekends? \_\_\_\_\_ I work.

- 5 Work in pairs. One of you is Bobbi Brown. Ask and answer questions about your life.

- Where ... you live/work?
- Are ... married?
- Do ... have children?
- What time ... get up/Saturday morning/Monday morning?
- Why ... get up at ...? Because I ...
- ... like your work?
- Why ... like it? Because it ...
- ... like cooking?
- ... your husband like cooking?
- Who ... you visit on Tuesdays and Thursdays?
- Where ... your father live?
- ... go out on Friday evenings? Why not?
- ... have a busy life?

### GRAMMAR SPOT

- 1 Complete the table for the Present Simple.

	Positive	Negative
I	work	don't work
You		
He/She		
It		
We		
They		

- 2 Complete the questions and answers.

Where \_\_\_\_ you work?  
Where \_\_\_\_ she work?  
\_\_\_\_ you work in New York? Yes, I \_\_\_\_\_.  
\_\_\_\_ he work in New York? No, he \_\_\_\_\_.

- 3 Find the words in the text:  
*always usually often sometimes never*

►► Grammar Reference 4.1 and 4.2 p127

- T 4.1** Listen again and check. Read the text aloud.

# PRACTICE

## Talking about you

- 1 Make the questions. Then match the questions and answers.

Questions	Answers
1 What time	do you like your job?
2 Where	do you travel to school?
3 What	do you go on holiday?
4 When	do you go to bed? _____
5 Who	you go out on Friday evenings?
6 Why	do you live with?
7 How	do you do on Sundays?
8 Do	do you do your homework?

**T 4.3** Listen and check.

- 2 Ask and answer the questions with a partner. Give true answers.

- 3 Tell the class about you and your partner.

*Maria gets up at half past eight. I get up at 8.00 on weekdays but at 11.00 at weekends.*

*I live with my parents and my grandmother. Maria lives with her parents, too.*

## Listening and pronunciation

- 4 **T 4.4** Tick (✓) the sentence you hear.

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1 <input type="checkbox"/> What does he do on Sundays?<br><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> What does she do on Sundays?                     | 4 <input type="checkbox"/> Where do you go on Saturday evenings?<br><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> What do you do on Saturday evenings? |
| 2 <input type="checkbox"/> Do you stay home on Tuesday evenings?<br><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Do you stay home on Thursday evenings? | 5 <input type="checkbox"/> I read a lot.<br><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> I eat a lot.   |
| 3 <input type="checkbox"/> He lives here.<br><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> He leaves here.   | 6 <input type="checkbox"/> Why do you like your job?<br><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Why don't you like your job?                     |

## A questionnaire

- 5 Read the questionnaire on p31. Answer the questions about you. Put ✓ or ✗ in column 1.

- 6 Ask your teacher the questions, then ask two students. Complete columns 2, 3, and 4.

*Do you smoke?*

*Yes, I do./Yes, sometimes.*

*No, I don't./No, never.*

*Do you like Chinese food?*

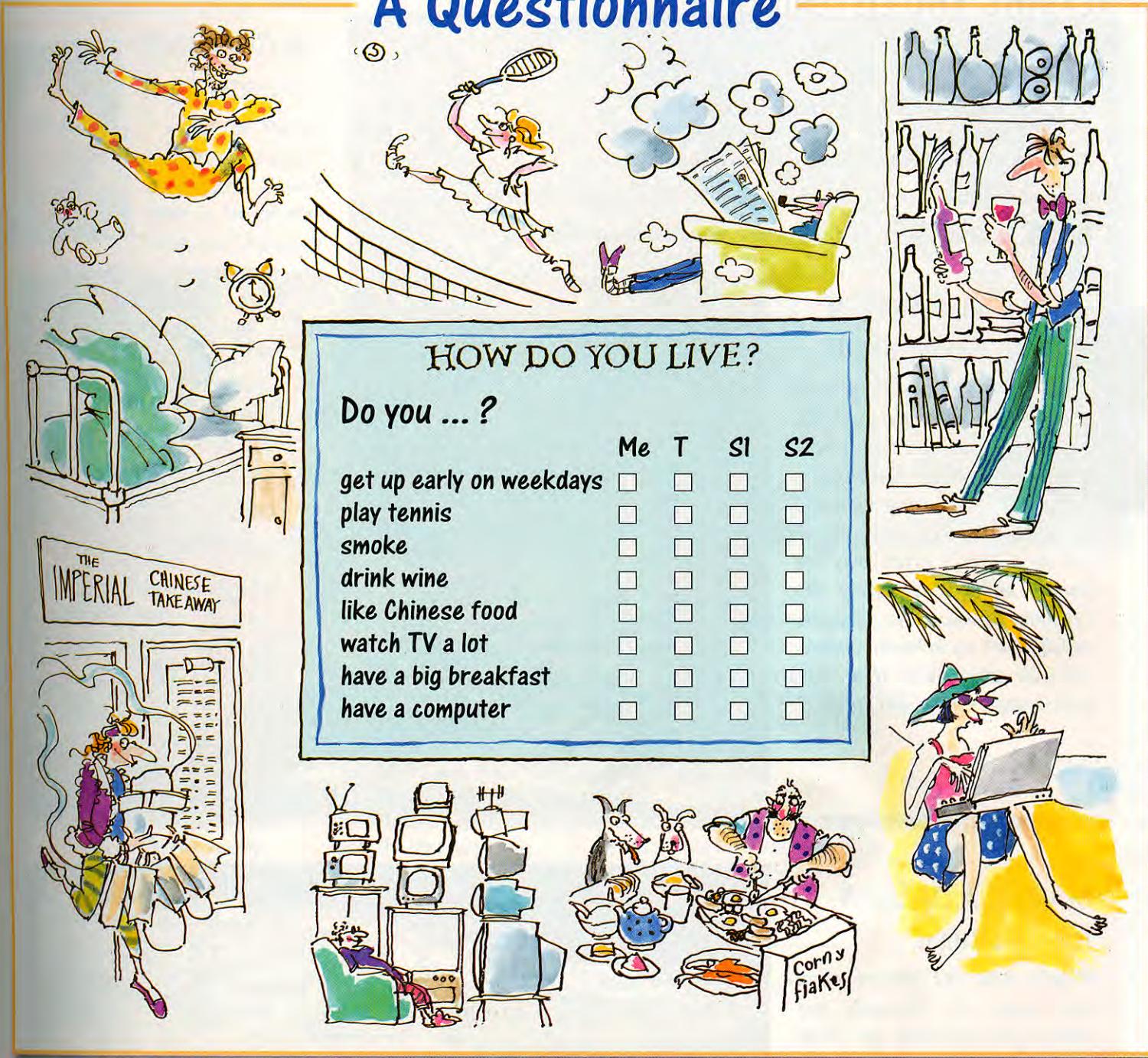
*No, I don't.*

*Yes, I like it a lot.*

- 7 Use the information in the questionnaire. Write about you and your teacher.

*I don't get up early on weekdays, but my teacher does. We don't play tennis ...*

# A Questionnaire



## Positives and negatives

8 Make the sentences opposite.

- 1 She's French. She isn't French.
- 2 I don't like cooking. I like cooking.
- 3 She doesn't speak Spanish.
- 4 They want to learn English.
- 5 We're tired and want to go to bed.
- 6 Roberto likes watching football on TV, but he doesn't like playing it.
- 7 I work at home because I have a computer.
- 8 Amelia isn't happy because she doesn't have a new car.
- 9 I smoke, I drink, and I don't go to bed early.
- 10 He doesn't smoke, he doesn't drink, and he goes to bed early.

# READING AND LISTENING

## My favourite season

- 1 1 What season is it now? What are the seasons?  
2 What month is it now? Say the months of the year.  
3 When are the different seasons in your country?
- 2 Look at the photographs. Which season is it? What colours do you see?
- 3 **T 4.5** Read and listen to three people from different countries.



### AL WHEELER from Canada

*We have long, cold winters and short, hot summers. We have a holiday home near a lake, so in summer I go sailing a lot and I play baseball, but in winter I often play ice hockey and go ice-skating. My favourite season is autumn, or fall, as we say in North America. I love the colours of the trees – red, gold, orange, yellow, and brown.*



### MANUELA DA SILVA from Portugal

*People think it's always warm and sunny in Portugal, but January and February are often cold, wet, and grey. I don't like winter. I usually meet friends in restaurants and bars and we chat. Sometimes we go to a Brazilian bar. I love Brazilian music. But then suddenly it's summer and at weekends we drive to the beach, sunbathe, and go swimming. I love summer.*





## TOSHI SUZUKI from Japan

I work for Pentax cameras, in the export department. I don't have a lot of free time, but I have one special hobby – taking photographs, of course! I like taking photographs of flowers, especially in spring. Sometimes, after work, I relax in a bar near my office with friends. My friend, Shigeru, likes singing pop songs in the bar. This has a special name, 'karaoke'. I don't sing – I'm too shy!



### 4 Answer the questions.

- 1 Do they all play sports?
- 2 What do Al and Manuela do in winter?
- 3 Do Manuela and Toshi like going to bars?
- 4 Where is Al's holiday home?
- 5 When does Toshi like taking photographs of flowers?
- 6 What do Manuela and her friends do in summer?
- 7 Do you know all their jobs?
- 8 Why does Al like autumn?
- 9 Why doesn't Toshi sing in the bar?
- 10 Which colours are in the texts?

### 5 There are six mistakes about Al, Manuela, and Toshi. Correct them.

**Al** comes from Canada. In winter he plays ice hockey and goes skiing. He has a holiday home near the sea.

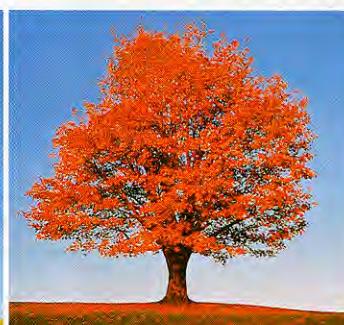
**Manuela** comes from Brazil. She likes sunbathing and sailing in summer.

**Toshi** comes from Japan. He has a lot of free time. He likes taking photographs and singing pop songs in bars.

### 6 **T 4.6** Listen to the conversations. Is it Al, Manuela, or Toshi? Where are they? How do you know? Discuss with a partner.

#### What do you think?

- What is *your* favourite season? Why?
- What do you do in the different seasons?

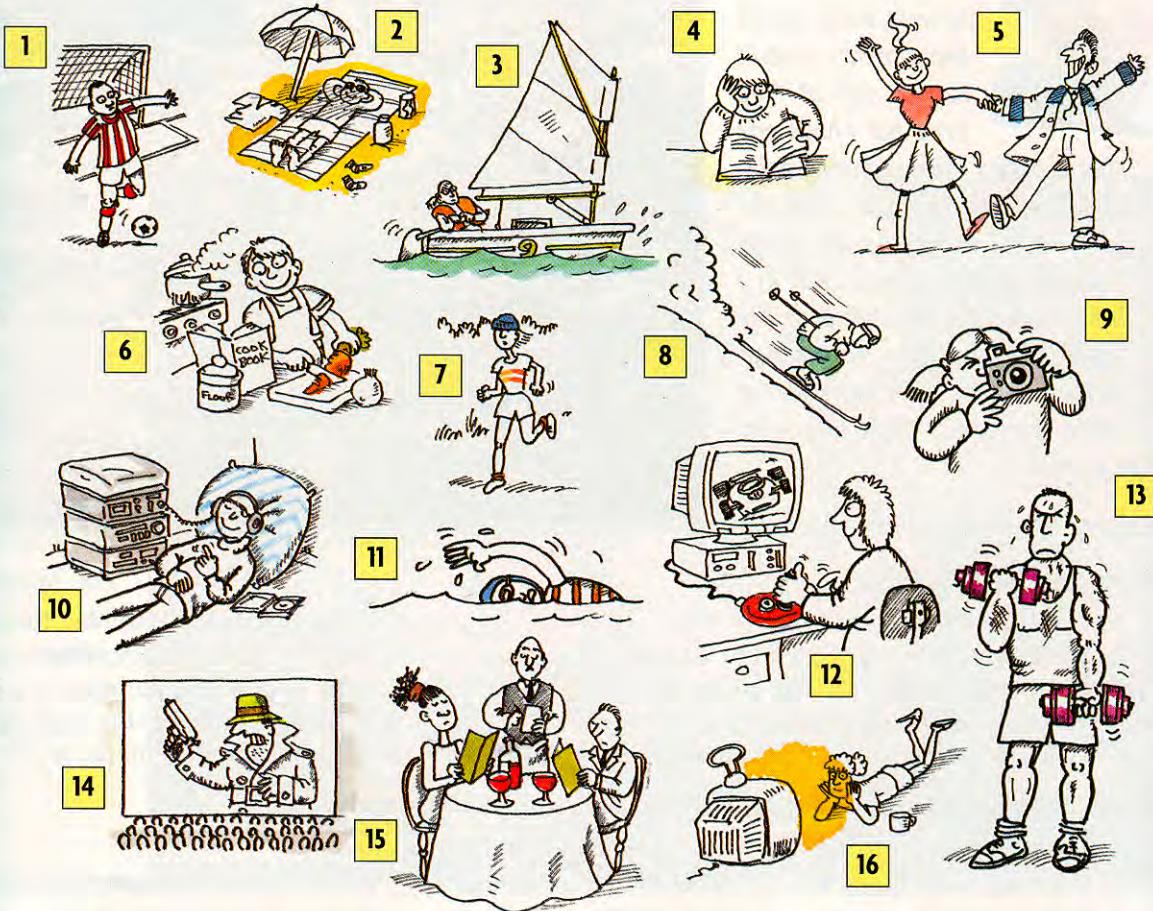


# VOCABULARY AND SPEAKING

## Leisure activities

1 Match the words and pictures. Tick (✓) the things that *you* like doing.

- playing football
- dancing
- skiing
- watching TV
- going to the gym
- taking photographs
- cooking
- playing computer games
- sailing
- listening to music
- swimming
- reading
- eating in restaurants
- going to the cinema
- jogging
- sunbathing



2 Discuss in groups what you think your teacher likes doing. Choose five activities.

I think he/she likes cooking.

No, I think he/she likes eating in restaurants.

Ask your teacher questions to find out who is correct.

Do you like cooking?

Do you like eating in restaurants?

3 Tell the other students what you *like* doing and what you *don't like* doing from the list. Ask questions about the activities.

I don't like watching TV, but I like reading very much.

Oh, really? What do you read?

Because it's boring.

Why don't you like watching TV?

4 Tell the other students things you like doing which are *not* on the list.

# EVERDAY ENGLISH

## Social expressions

1 Complete the conversations with the expressions.

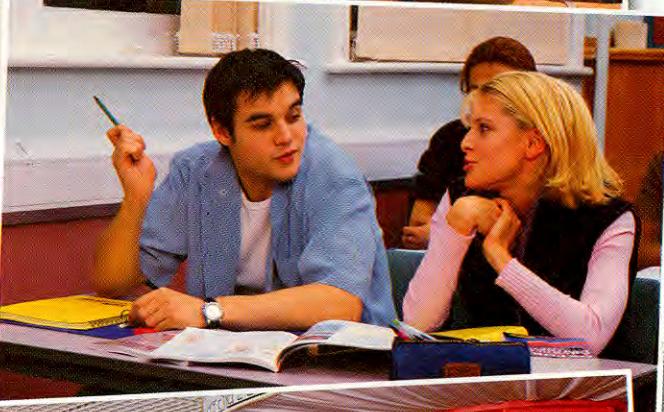
1 A _____ . The traffic is bad today.	
B _____ . Come and sit down. We're on page 25.	Don't worry. I'm sorry I'm late.



2 A _____ .	
B Yes?	I'm sorry,
A Do you have a dictionary?	Excuse me.
B _____ I don't. It's at home.	That's OK.
A _____ .	



3 A It's very hot in here. _____ ?	
B _____ ? I'm quite cold.	Really? Can I open the window?
A OK. _____ .	It doesn't matter.



4 A _____ !	
B Can I help you?	Pardon?
A Can I have a film for my camera?	Now I understand!
B How many exposures?	Excuse me!
A _____ ?	What does 'exposures' mean?
B How many pictures? 24? 36? 40?	
A Ah! _____ ! 40, please.	



T 4.7 Listen and check.

2 Practise the conversations with a partner.

# 5

# Where do you live?

**There is/are • Prepositions • some/any • this/that • Furniture • Directions 1**

## STARTER

- 1 Write the words in the correct column.

an armchair a fridge a television  
a coffee table a shelf a plant a stereo  
a lamp a cooker a washing machine  
a telephone a cupboard a cup a sofa

- 2 What's in your living room?  
Tell a partner.

The living room	The kitchen	both

## WHAT'S IN THE LIVING ROOM?

*There is/are, prepositions*

- 1 Helen has a new flat. Describe her living room on p37.

*There's a telephone.*

*There are two plants.*

- 2 **T 5.1** Read and listen. Complete the answers.  
Practise the questions and answers.

- Is there a television? Yes, there \_\_\_\_\_.  
Is there a radio? No, there \_\_\_\_\_.  
Are there any books? Yes, there \_\_\_\_\_.  
How many books are there? There \_\_\_\_\_ a lot.  
Are there any photographs? No, there \_\_\_\_\_.

## GRAMMAR SPOT

Complete the tables.

**Positive**

There	_____	a television.
	_____	some books.

**Negative**

There	_____	a radio.
	_____	any photos.

**Question**

_____	there	a television?
		any books?

►► Grammar Reference 5.1 and 5.2 p127

- 3 Ask and answer questions about these things.

a dog	a cat	a computer
a fire	a mirror	a clock
a rug		

plants	pictures	bookshelves
lamps	newspapers	photos
flowers		

*Is there a cat?*

*Yes, there is.*

- 4 Look at the picture of Helen's living room.  
Complete the sentences with a preposition.

on	under	next to	in front of
----	-------	---------	-------------

- The television is \_\_\_\_\_ the cupboard.
- The coffee table is \_\_\_\_\_ the sofa.
- There are some magazines \_\_\_\_\_ the table.
- The television is \_\_\_\_\_ the stereo.
- There are two pictures \_\_\_\_\_ the walls.
- The cat is \_\_\_\_\_ the rug \_\_\_\_\_ the fire.



Helen's living room

## PRACTICE

### What's in your picture?

- 1 Work with a partner. Look at the pictures from your teacher. There's a picture of another living room and lots of things that go in it. *Don't* look at your partner's picture.

**Student A** Your picture is not complete. Ask Student B questions and find out where the things go. Draw them on your picture.

*Where's the lamp? Where exactly?*

**Student B** Your picture is complete. Answer Student A's questions and help him/her complete the picture.

*It's on the table. Next to the book.*

- 2 **T 5.2** Look at the complete picture together. Listen to someone describing it. There are *five* mistakes in the description. Say 'Stop!' when you hear a mistake.

*Stop! There aren't three people! There are four people!*

# WHAT'S IN THE KITCHEN?

*some/any, this/that/these/those*

- 1 This is the kitchen in Helen's new flat. Describe it.

## Helen's kitchen



- 2 **T 5.3** Listen and complete the conversation between Helen and her friend, Bob.

Helen And this is the kitchen.

Bob Mmm, it's very nice.

Helen Well, it's not very big, but there \_\_\_\_\_ a \_\_\_\_\_ of cupboards. And \_\_\_\_\_'s  
a new fridge, and a cooker. That's new, too.

Bob But what's *in* all these cupboards?

Helen Well, not a lot. There are some cups, but there aren't any plates. And I have  
\_\_\_\_\_ knives and forks, but I don't have \_\_\_\_\_ spoons!

Bob Do you have \_\_\_\_\_ glasses?

Helen No. Sorry.

Bob Never mind. We can drink this champagne from those cups! Cheers!

- 3 What is there in your kitchen? How is your kitchen different from Helen's?

## GRAMMAR SPOT

### 1 What's the difference between the sentences?

There are **two** magazines.

There are **some** magazines.

### 2 When do we say *some*? When do we say *any*?

There are **some** cups.

There aren't **any** glasses.

Are there **any** spoons?

### 3 Complete the sentences with *this*, *that*, *these*, or *those*.



1 I like \_\_\_\_\_ champagne. 3 \_\_\_\_\_ cooker is new.



2 \_\_\_\_\_ flowers are lovely. 4 Give me \_\_\_\_\_ cups.

► Grammar Reference 5.3 and 5.4 p127

## PRACTICE

### In our classroom

#### 1 Complete the sentences with *some* or *any*.

1 In our classroom there are \_\_\_\_\_ books on the floor.

2 There aren't \_\_\_\_\_ plants.

3 Are there \_\_\_\_\_ Spanish students in your class?

4 There aren't \_\_\_\_\_ Chinese students.

5 We have \_\_\_\_\_ dictionaries in the cupboard.

6 There aren't \_\_\_\_\_ pens in my bag.

#### 2 What is there in your classroom? Describe it.

#### 3 Talk about things in your classroom, using *this*/*that*/*these*/*those*. Point to or hold the things.

This is my favourite pen.

I like that bag.

These chairs are nice.

Those windows are dirty.

## What's in Pierre's briefcase?

### 4 T 5.4 Pierre is a Frenchman on business in Boston. Listen to him describe what's in his briefcase. Tick (✓) the things in it.



- a newspaper
- a dictionary
- a sandwich
- pens
- a notebook
- keys
- a bus ticket
- a letter
- photos
- a mobile phone
- stamps
- an address book

#### 5 Look in your bag. Ask and answer questions about your bags with a partner.

Is there a dictionary in your bag?

Are there any stamps?

How many stamps are there?

### Check it

#### 6 Tick (✓) the correct sentence.

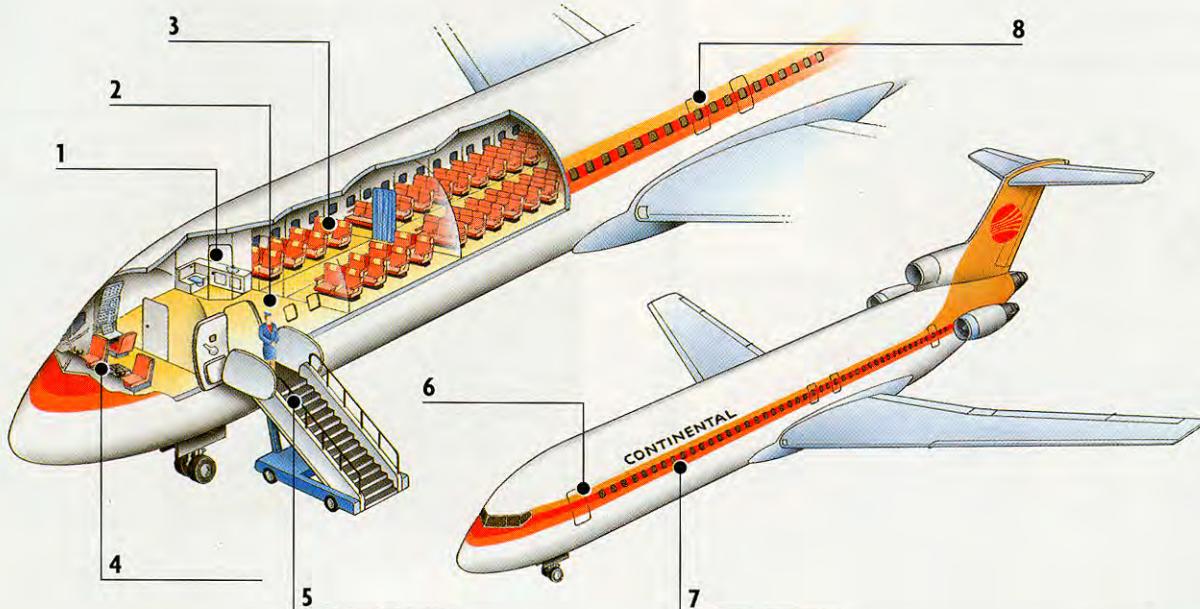
- There aren't some sandwiches.
- There aren't any sandwiches.
- Do you have some good dictionary?
- Do you have a good dictionary?
- I have some photos of my dog.
- I have any photos of my dog.
- I have lot of books.
- I have a lot of books.
- How many students are there in this class?
- How many of students are there in this class?
- Next my house there's a park.
- Next to my house there's a park.
- Look at this house over there!
- Look at that house over there!
- Henry, that is my mother. Mum, that is Henry.
- Henry, this is my mother. Mum, this is Henry.

# READING AND SPEAKING

## At home on a plane

- 1 Write the words in the correct place on the picture. What other things are there on a plane?

steps a cockpit a flight attendant the first class section emergency exit windows door toilet



- 2 Read about Joanne Ussery and answer the questions.

- |                        |                                     |
|------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| 1 How old is she?      | 4 How many grandsons does she have? |
| 2 Where does she live? | 5 How many bedrooms are there?      |
| 3 How old is her home? | 6 How many toilets are there?       |

- 3 Are the sentences true (✓) or false (✗)?

- 1 Joanne loves her home.
- 2 You need a ticket when you visit her.
- 3 The bathroom is next to the living room.
- 4 Joanne sometimes opens the emergency exit doors.
- 5 There is a photo of the plane in the living room.
- 6 It's very warm in summer because she doesn't have air conditioning.
- 7 Her friends love her parties because flight attendants serve the drinks.
- 8 She doesn't want to buy another plane.

- 4 Work with a partner. Ask and answer questions about Joanne's home.

*Is there a bathroom?*

*Yes, there is.*

*Are there any bedrooms?*

*Yes, there are.  
There are three.*

Ask about these things:

- a telephone
- a dishwasher
- toilets
- flight attendants
- an upstairs bedroom

## What do you think?

What do you like about Joanne's home? What don't you like?





# The lady who lives on a plane

Joanne Ussery, 54, from Mississippi is a big favourite with her two grandsons because she lives on a jet plane. Her home is a Boeing 727, so a visit to grandma is very special.

**J**oanne's front door is at the top of the plane's steps, but you don't need a ticket or a passport when you visit. There are three bedrooms, a living room, a modern kitchen, and a luxury bathroom. The bathroom is in the cockpit, with the bath under the windows. Next to this is Joanne's bedroom in the first class section of the plane. Then there's the living room with four emergency exit doors, which she opens on summer evenings. On the wall there's a photo of the plane flying for Continental Airlines from Florida to the Caribbean. There are also four toilets, all with No Smoking signs.

'The plane is 27 years old and it's the best home in the world,' says Joanne. 'It has all the things you want in a home: a telephone, air conditioning, a cooker, a washing machine, even a dishwasher. It's always very warm, even in winter, and it's very big, 42 metres long. My grandchildren love running up and down. And my friends love parties here, but there aren't any flight attendants to serve them their drinks!'

The plane cost Joanne just \$2,000. 'Next time,' she says, 'I want a Boeing 747, not a 727, because they have an upstairs and a downstairs, and I want to go upstairs to bed!' 



# LISTENING AND SPEAKING

## Homes around the world

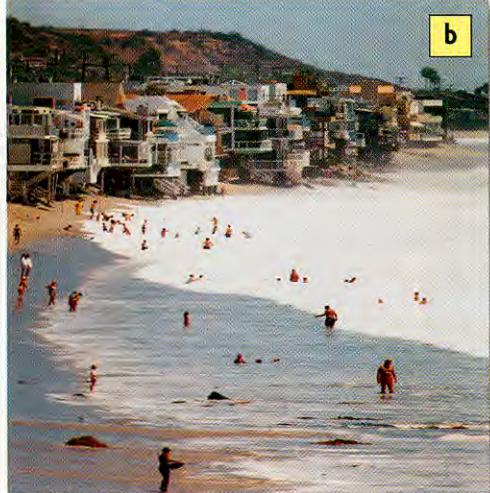
c

1 Match the places and the photos. What do you know about them?

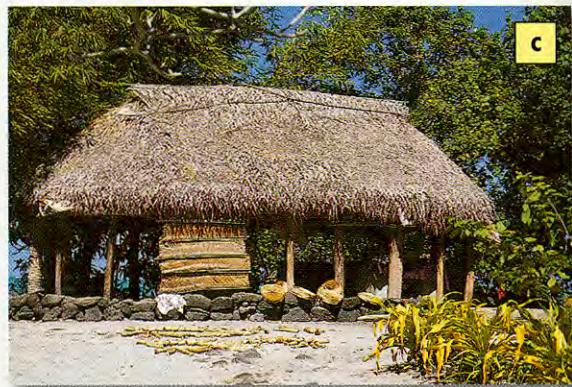
- Lisbon    Toronto    Malibu    Samoa

2 **T 5.5** Listen to some people from these places. Complete the chart.

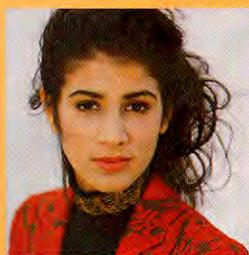
a



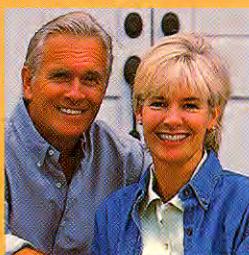
b



d



**Manola**  
from LISBON



**Ray and Elsie**  
from TORONTO



**Brad**  
from MALIBU



**Alise**  
from SAMOA

**House or flat?**


**Old or modern?**

**Where?**

**How many bedrooms?**

**Live(s) with?**

**Extra information**

3 Talk about where you live.

*Do you live in a house or a flat?*

*Where is it?*

*How many rooms are there?*

*Do you have a garden?*

*Who do you live with?*

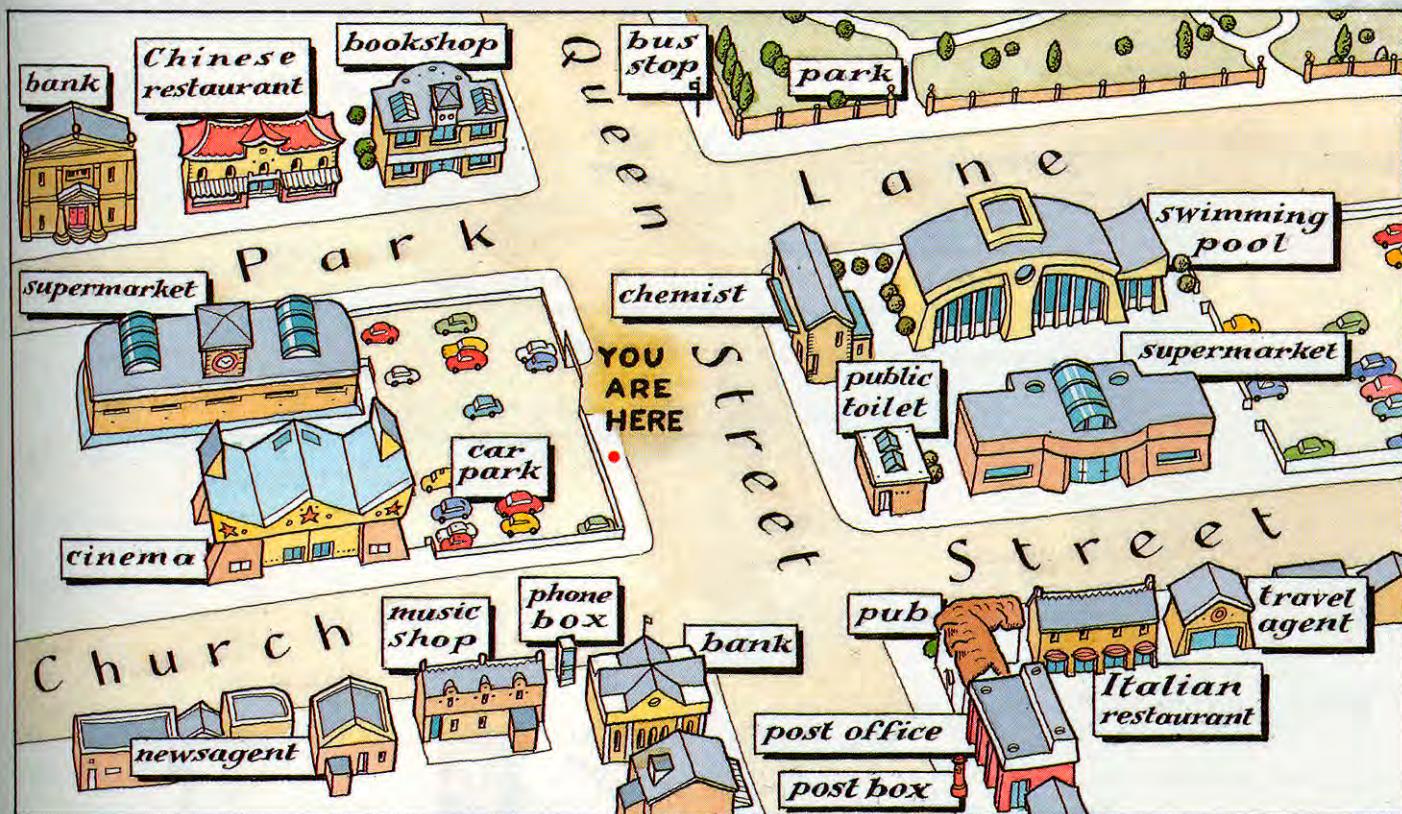
4 Write a paragraph about where you live.

# EVERYDAY ENGLISH

## Directions 1

1 Look at the street map. Where can you buy these things?

some aspirin a CD a plane ticket a newspaper a book some stamps



2 T 5.6 Listen to the conversations and complete them.

1 A Excuse me! Is \_\_\_\_\_ a chemist \_\_\_\_\_ here?

B Yes. It's over \_\_\_\_\_.

A Thanks.

2 A \_\_\_\_\_ me! Is there a \_\_\_\_\_ near here?

B Yes. \_\_\_\_\_ Church Street. Take the first \_\_\_\_\_ right. It's \_\_\_\_\_ the music shop.

A Oh yes. Thanks.

3 A Excuse me! Is there a \_\_\_\_\_ near here?

B There's a Chinese one in Park Lane \_\_\_\_\_ the bank, and there's an Italian one in Church Street next to the \_\_\_\_\_.

A Is that one \_\_\_\_\_?

B No. Just two minutes, that's all.

4 A Is there a post office near here?

B Go straight ahead, and it's \_\_\_\_\_ left, \_\_\_\_\_ the pub.

A Thanks a lot.

3 Make more conversations with your partner. Ask and answer about these places:

- a bookshop
- a cinema
- a bank
- a phone box
- a public toilet
- a music shop
- a supermarket
- a bus stop
- a park
- a swimming pool
- a post box
- a pub

4 Talk about where *you* are. Is there a chemist near here? Is it far? What about a bank/a post office/a supermarket?

Practise the conversations with a partner.

# 6

# Can you speak English?

*can/can't/could/couldn't • was/were • Words that sound the same • On the phone*

## STARTER



1 Where do people speak these languages?

French Spanish German Italian Portuguese Japanese English

*They speak French in France and also in Canada.*

2 Which languages can you speak?

Tell the class.

*I can speak English and a little Spanish. And of course, I can speak my language.*

## WHAT CAN YOU DO?

*can/can't*

1 **T 6.1** Match the sentences and pictures.  
Then listen and check.

- 1 He can ski really well.
- 2 She can use a computer.
- 3 'Can dogs swim?' 'Yes, they can.'
- 4 'Can you speak Japanese?' 'No, I can't.'
- 5 I can't spell your name.
- 6 We can't understand the question.

### GRAMMAR SPOT

1 Say all persons of *can* and *can't*.

*I can, you can, he ... she ... it ... we ... they ...*

*I can't, you ..., etc.*

What do you notice?

2 **T 6.2** Listen and repeat these sentences.

I can speak French.	= /kən/
Can you speak French?	= /kæn/
Yes, I can.	= /kə:n/
No, I can't.	= /ka:nt/

3 Say these sentences.

• • •      • • •  
We can swim.    She can't cook.

►► Grammar Reference 6.1 p128

a



b



c



d



e



f



- T 6.3** Listen and complete the sentences with *can* or *can't* + verb.

- 1 I \_\_\_\_\_, but I \_\_\_\_\_.
- 2 He \_\_\_\_\_, but he \_\_\_\_\_.
- 3 '\_\_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_\_?' 'Yes, I \_\_\_\_\_.'
- 4 They \_\_\_\_\_, but they \_\_\_\_\_.
- 5 We \_\_\_\_\_ and we \_\_\_\_\_.
- 6 '\_\_\_\_\_ she \_\_\_\_\_?' 'No, she \_\_\_\_\_.'

## PRACTICE

**Tina can't cook. Can you?**

- T 6.4** Listen to Tina and complete the chart. Put **✓** or **X**.



Can ... ?	Tina	you	your partner
drive a car			
speak French			
speak Italian			
cook			
play tennis			
ski			
swim			
play the piano			
use a computer			

- 2 Complete the chart about you.
- 3 Complete the chart about your partner. Ask and answer the questions.

*Can you drive a car?*

*No, I can't.*

*Can you ski?*

*Yes, I can. But not very well.*

Tell the class about you and your partner.

*Louis can ski, but I can't.*

## What can computers do?

- 4** Talk about computers with a partner. What can they do? What can't they do?

*They can translate, but they can't speak English.*

*Yes, they can.*

## COMPUTERS

**Can they . . . ?**

- translate
- write poetry
- speak English
- laugh
- play chess
- hear
- check spellings
- feel
- make music
- think
- have conversations
- fall in love



- 5** What can people do that computers can't do?

# WHERE WERE YOU YESTERDAY?

*was/were, can/could*

Read the questions. Complete the answers.

Present	Past
1 What day is it today? It's _____ .	What day was it yesterday? It was _____ .
2 What month is it now? It's _____ .	What month was it last month? It was _____ .
3 Where are you now? I'm in/at _____ .	Where were you yesterday? I was in/at _____ .
4 Are you in England? _____, I am. _____, I'm not.	Were you in England in 1999? _____. I was. _____. I wasn't.
5 Can you swim? _____, I can. _____, I can't.	Could you swim when you were five? _____. I could. _____. I couldn't.
6 Can your teacher speak three languages? Yes, _____ can. No, _____ can't.	Could your teacher speak English when he/she was seven? Yes, _____ could. No, _____ couldn't.

## GRAMMAR SPOT

1 Complete the table with the past of *to be*.

	Positive	Negative
I	was	wasn't
You	were	weren't
He/She/It	_____	_____
We	_____	_____
They	_____	_____

2 **T 6.5** Listen and repeat.

/wəz/ /wə/

It was Monday yesterday. We were at school.

In short answers the pronunciation is different.

/wɒz/

'Was it hot?'

'Yes, it was.'

/wɜ:/

'Were you tired?'

'Yes, we were.'

3 What is the past of *can*?

Positive	Negative
----------	----------

► Grammar Reference 6.1 and 6.2 p128

## PRACTICE

### Talking about you

1 Ask and answer questions with a partner.

Where were you ... ?

- at eight o'clock this morning
- at half past six yesterday evening
- at two o'clock this morning
- at this time yesterday
- at ten o'clock last night
- last Saturday evening

2 Complete the conversation, using *was*, *were*, *wasn't*, *weren't*, or *couldn't*.



Kim \_\_\_\_\_ you at Charlotte's party last Saturday?

Max Yes, I \_\_\_\_\_ .

Kim \_\_\_\_\_ it good?

Max Well, it \_\_\_\_\_ OK.

Kim \_\_\_\_\_ there many people?

Max Yes, there \_\_\_\_\_ .

Kim \_\_\_\_\_ Henry there?

Max No, he \_\_\_\_\_ . And where \_\_\_\_\_ you? Why \_\_\_\_\_ you there?

Kim Oh ... I \_\_\_\_\_ go because I \_\_\_\_\_ at Mark's party! It \_\_\_\_\_ brilliant!

**T 6.6** Listen and check. Listen for the pronunciation of *was* and *were*. Practise with a partner.

## Four geniuses!

3 The people in the photos were all geniuses. Who are they?

4 Look at these sentences.

*I was born in London in 1973. I could read when I was four.*

*My sister couldn't read until she was seven.*

Match lines in **A**, **B**, and **C** and make similar sentences about the four geniuses.

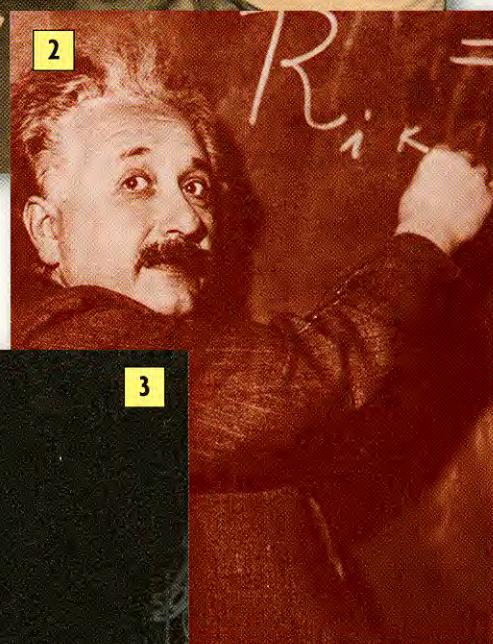
A	B	C
Mozart / born in	Siberia / 1938	paint / one
Picasso / born in	Germany / 1879	dance / two
Nureyev / born in	Austria / 1756	play the piano / three
Einstein / born in	Spain / 1881	couldn't speak / eight

5 Ask and answer questions with a partner about the geniuses.

*When was Mozart born?*

*Where was he born?*

*How old was he when he could ... ?*



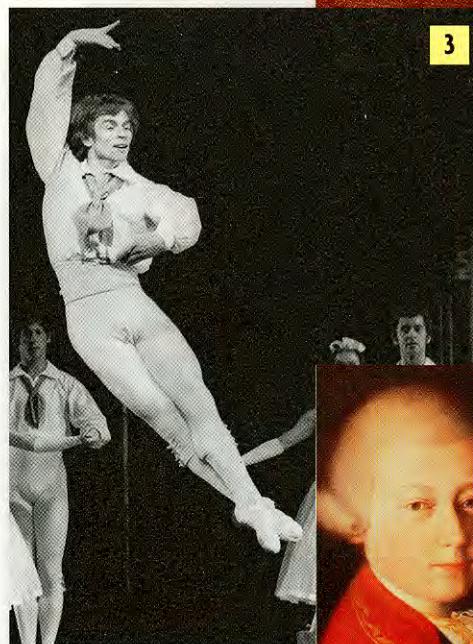
6 Work in groups. Ask and answer questions about you.

1 Where were you born?

2 When were you born?

3 How old were you when you could ... ?

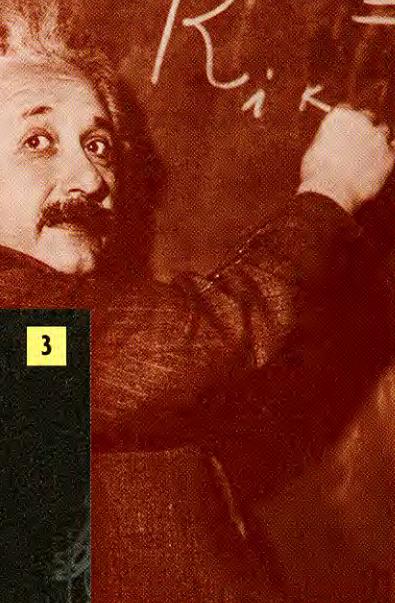
- walk                      • talk
- read                      • swim
- ride a bike              • use a computer
- speak a foreign language



## Check it

7 Tick (✓) the correct sentence.

- 1  I don't can use a computer.  
 I can't use a computer.
- 2  Was they at the party?  
 Were they at the party?
- 3  I'm sorry. I can't go to the party.  
 I'm sorry. I no can go to the party.
- 4  She was no at home.  
 She wasn't at home.
- 5  He could play chess when he was five.  
 He can play chess when he was five.
- 6  I can to speak English very well.  
 I can speak English very well.



# READING AND SPEAKING

## Super Kids

- 1 Look at the children in the photographs. How old are they? What can they do?
- 2 Work in two groups.  
**Group A** Read about little Miss Picasso.  
**Group B** Read about the new Mozart.
- 3 Answer the questions about Alexandra or Lukas.
  - 1 How old is she/he?
  - 2 Why is she/he special?
  - 3 Where was she/he born?
  - 4 Where does she/he live now?
  - 5 Who does she/he live with?
  - 6 Does she/he go to school?
  - 7 What could she/he do when she/he was very young?
  - 8 Does she/he have much free time? Why not?
  - 9 Is she/he poor?
  - 10 Where was she/he last year?
- 4 Find a partner from the other group. Tell your partner about your child, using your answers.
- 5 What is the same about Alexandra and Lukas? What is different? Discuss with your partner.

*They are both geniuses.*

*Alexandra is a painter, and  
Lukas is a pianist.*

### Roleplay

- 6 Work with a partner.

**Student A** is a journalist.

**Student B** is Alexandra or Lukas.

Ask and answer questions, using the questions in exercise 3 to help you.

*Hello, Alexandra! Can I ask you one or two questions?*

*Of course.*

*First of all, how old are you?*

*I'm thirteen.*



## The New Mozart

Ten-year-old **Lukas Vondracek** is very shy, but every year he travels the world and meets hundreds of people. Lukas is a brilliant pianist and he gives lots of concerts. Last year he was in Washington, Chicago, and London. He is sometimes called 'the new Mozart'. He says 'I'm shy, but I love giving concerts.'

Lukas was born in Opava in the Czech Republic but now he lives with his parents in Vienna, where he practises the piano six hours a day. He goes to school two days a week. Lukas could play the piano when he was two and he could read music before he could read books. Now he can write music, too. Lukas doesn't just play the piano, he plays football and ice hockey. He says: 'Mozart was poor and he couldn't play football, so I'm not like him at all!'

# Little Miss Picasso

**Alexandra Nechita** is thirteen and she is called 'the new Picasso'. She paints large pictures in cubist style and sells them for between \$10,000 and \$80,000.

She was born in Romania but now she lives in Los Angeles with her family. She could paint very well when she was only four but her parents couldn't understand her pictures. Alexandra says: 'I paint how I feel, sometimes I'm happy and sometimes sad. I can't stop painting.' Every day after school she does her homework, plays with her little brother, then paints for two or three hours until bedtime.

Alexandra doesn't spend her money, she saves it: 'We were very poor when we were first in America. We couldn't buy many things, but now I can buy a big house for my family and we can travel the world. Last year we were in London, Paris, and Rome. It was fantastic!'



## VOCABULARY AND PRONUNCIATION

### Words that sound the same

- 1 Look at the sentences. What do you notice about these words?

I have a black **eye**.

**No**, he doesn't **know** the answer.

- 2 Find the words in B that have the same pronunciation as the words in A.

A

hear    write    wear  
see    eye    there    hour  
by    for    too  
know    son

B

our    sea    sun  
buy    no    where  
two    here    right  
            their

- 3 Correct the two spelling mistakes in each sentence.

- 1 I can **here** you, but I can't **sea** you.
- 2 Their are three bedrooms in **hour** house.
- 3 I don't **no** wear Jill lives.
- 4 My sun lives near the **see**.
- 5 Don't **where** that hat, by a new one!
- 6 Know, eye can't come to your party.
- 7 You were **write**. Sally and Peter can't come four dinner.
- 8 There daughter could **right** when she was three.
- 9 I **no** my answers are **write**.

- 4 Look at the phonetic symbols. Write the two words with the same pronunciation.

- 1 /nəʊ/    \_\_\_\_\_    \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 /sʌn/    \_\_\_\_\_    \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 /tu:/    \_\_\_\_\_    \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 /raɪt/    \_\_\_\_\_    \_\_\_\_\_
- 5 /hɪə/    \_\_\_\_\_    \_\_\_\_\_
- 6 /weə/    \_\_\_\_\_    \_\_\_\_\_

## EVERDAY ENGLISH

### On the phone

- 1 When you do not know someone's telephone number, you can phone Directory Enquiries. In Britain you ring 153 for international numbers. Here are the names and addresses of some people you want to phone.

WILSON  
ASSOCIATES

Nancy Wilson  
302 Erindale Road  
PERTH 6034  
Australia  
Tel: \_\_\_\_\_  
e-mail:  
n.wilson@connect.com.au



Franziska Novak  
Karl Marx Allee 99  
10265 BERLIN  
Deutschland

e-mail:  
nordk@bz\_berlin.de  
Tel/fax:  
\_\_\_\_\_

Avenida Vitória 713  
SÃO PAULO – SP

Brasil  
Tel: \_\_\_\_\_  
Fax: \_\_\_\_\_  
E-mail: ferreira\_m@dpret.com.br

**Mauricio Ferreira**

- T 6.7** Listen to the operator and answer her questions. Get Nancy's telephone number.

**Operator** International Directory Enquiries. Which country, please?

You Australia.

**Operator** And which town?

You \_\_\_\_\_.

**Operator** Can I have the last name, please?

You \_\_\_\_\_.

**Operator** And the initial?

You \_\_\_\_\_.

**Operator** What's the address?

You \_\_\_\_\_.

**Recorded message** The number you require is \_\_\_\_\_.

- 2 Work with a partner. Look at the numbers from your teacher. Ask and answer to get the telephone and fax numbers of Franziska and Mauricio.

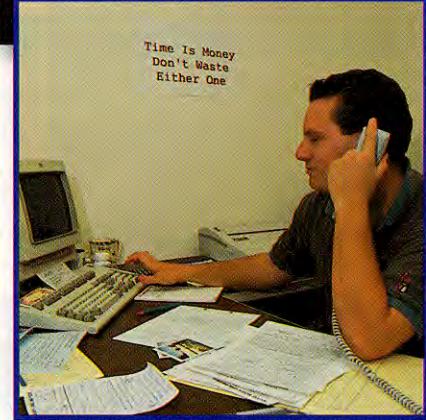
- 3 Read the lines below. They are all from telephone conversations.  
What do you think the lines before and/or after are? Discuss with a partner.

- 1 This is Jo.
- 2 Can I take a message?
- 3 Great! See you on Sunday at ten, then. Bye!
- 4 Oh, never mind. Perhaps next time. Bye!
- 5 No, it isn't. I'll just get her.
- 6 I'll ring back later.
- 7 There's a party at my house on Saturday. Can you come?
- 8 Can I speak to the manager, please?

- 4 Complete the conversations with a line from exercise 3.



I'll = I will  
will = an offer or promise  
I'll help you



- 1 A Hello.  
B Hello. Can I speak to Jo, please?  
A \_\_\_\_\_.  
B Oh! Hi, Jo. This is Pat. Is Sunday still OK for tennis?  
A Yes, that's fine.  
B \_\_\_\_\_!  
A Bye!

- 2 A Hello.  
B Hello. Is that Liz?  
A \_\_\_\_\_.  
...  
C Hello, Liz here.  
B Hi, Liz. It's Tom. Listen!  
\_\_\_\_\_?  
C Oh sorry, Tom. I can't. It's my sister's wedding.  
B \_\_\_\_\_!  
C Bye!

- 3 A Good morning, Barclays Bank, Watford. How can I help you?  
B Good morning. \_\_\_\_\_?  
A I'm afraid Mr Smith isn't in his office at the moment.  
\_\_\_\_\_  
B Don't worry. \_\_\_\_\_.  
A All right. Goodbye.  
B Goodbye.

**T 6.8** Listen and check. Practise the conversations.

Make similar conversations with your partner.

## 7

# Then and now

Past Simple 1 – regular verbs • Irregular verbs • Silent letters • Special occasions

## STARTER

When were your grandparents and great-grandparents born? Where were they born? Do you know all their names? What were their jobs? If you know, tell the class.

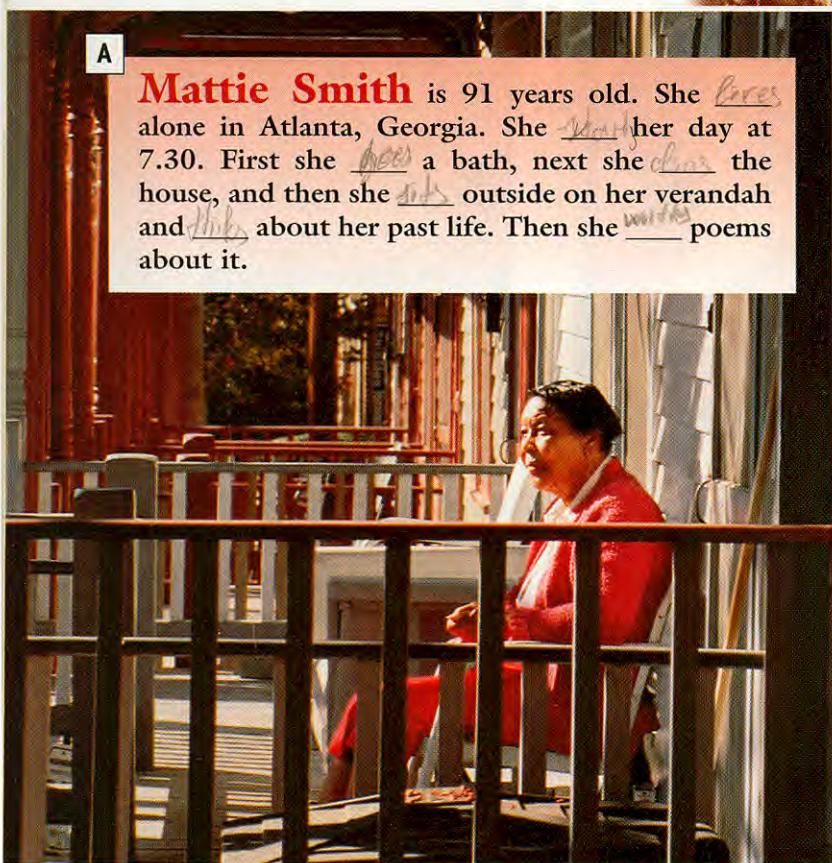
## WHEN I WAS YOUNG

Past Simple – regular verbs

- 1 **T 7.1** Read and listen to Mattie Smith's life now. Complete text A with the verbs you hear.

A

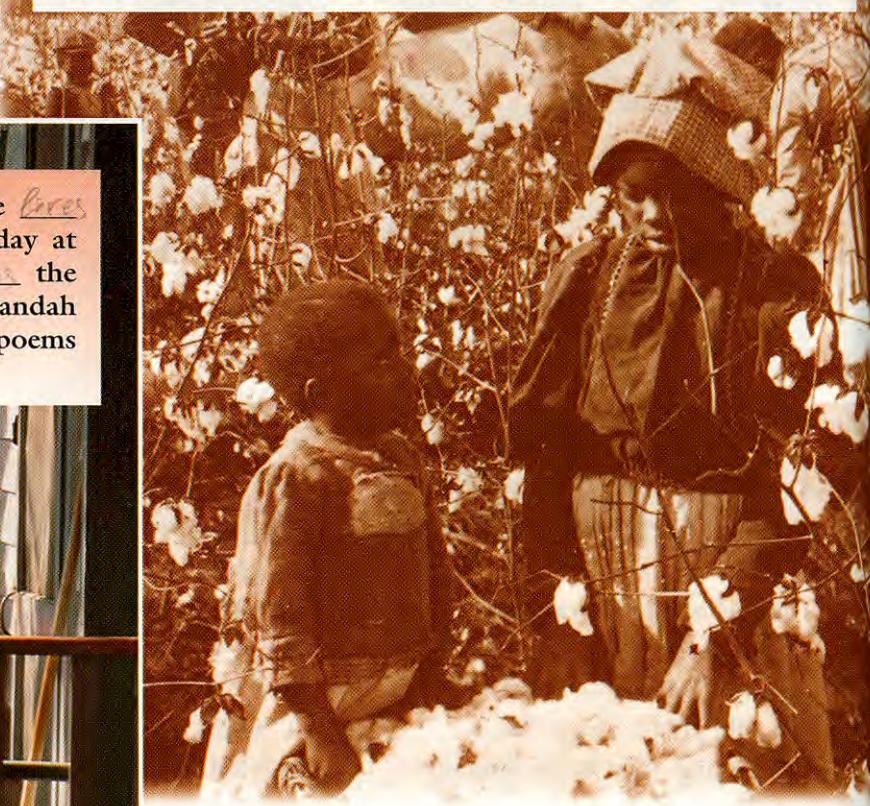
**Mattie Smith** is 91 years old. She lives alone in Atlanta, Georgia. She wakes her day at 7.30. First she takes a bath, next she cleans the house, and then she sits outside on her verandah and thinks about her past life. Then she writes poems about it.



- 2 **T 7.2** Read and listen to text B about Mattie's life a long time ago.

B

Mattie was never at school. She lived with her mother and four sisters. She started work when she was eight. She worked in the cotton fields from 6.00 in the morning to 10.00 at night. She couldn't read or write but she could think, and she created poems in her head.



### GRAMMAR SPOT

- Find examples of the past of *is* and *can* in text B.
- Complete the sentence with *live* in the correct form.  
Now she \_\_\_\_\_ alone, but when she was a child she \_\_\_\_\_ with her mother and sisters.
- Find the Past Simple of *start*, *work*, and *create* in text B.  
How do we form the Past Simple of regular verbs?

► Grammar Reference 7.1 p129

**3 T 7.3** What is the past form of these verbs? Listen and practise saying them.

look work love learn earn marry die hate want

**4 T 7.4** Read and listen to Mattie talking about her past life.

Complete the text, using the Past Simple form of the verbs in exercise 3.

'I \_\_\_\_\_ from 6.00 in the morning until 10.00 at night. Sixteen hours in the cotton fields and I only \_\_\_\_\_ \$2 a day. I sure \_\_\_\_\_ that job but I \_\_\_\_\_ the poems in my head. I really \_\_\_\_\_ to learn to read and write. When I was sixteen I \_\_\_\_\_ Hubert, and soon there were six children, five sons, then a daughter, Lily. Hubert \_\_\_\_\_ just before she was born. That was sixty-five years ago. So I \_\_\_\_\_ after my family alone. There was no time for learning, but my children, they all \_\_\_\_\_ to read and write – that was important to me. And when did I learn to read and write? I didn't learn until I was 86, and now I have three books of poems.'

### GRAMMAR SPOT

1 Find a question and a negative in the last part of the text about Mattie.

2 Look at these questions.

Where **does** she live now?

Where **did** she live in 1950?

*Did* is the past of *do* and *does*. We use *did* to form a question in the Past Simple.

3 We use **didn't** (= *did not*) to form the negative.

She **didn't** learn to read until she was 86.

►► Grammar Reference 7.2 p129

**5** Complete the questions about Mattie.

1 When **did** she **start** work?

When she was eight years old.

2 Where **was** she **in**?

In the cotton fields.

3 Who **was** she **with**?

Her mother and sisters.

4 How many hours **were** she **at**?

Sixteen hours a day.

5 How much **was** she **paid**?

\$2 a day.

6 Who **was** she **married** to?

Hubert.

7 When **was** Hubert **born**?

Sixty-five years ago.

8 When **did** she **learn** to read?

She didn't learn until she was 86.

**T 7.5** Listen and check. Practise the questions and answers with a partner.

## PRACTICE

### Talking about you

- 1 Complete the sentences with *did*, *was*, or *were*.

- 1 Where \_\_\_\_\_ you born? Where \_\_\_\_\_ your mother born?
- 2 When \_\_\_\_\_ you start school?
- 3 When \_\_\_\_\_ you learn to read and write?
- 4 Who \_\_\_\_\_ your first teacher?
- 5 What \_\_\_\_\_ your favourite subject?
- 6 Where \_\_\_\_\_ you live when you \_\_\_\_\_ a child?
- 7 \_\_\_\_\_ you live in a house or a flat?

- 2 Stand up! Ask two or three students the questions in exercise 1.
- 3 Tell the class some of the information you learned.

*Enrico was born in ...*

*His mother ...*

*He started school ...*

### Pronunciation

- 4 **T 7.6** The *-ed* ending of regular verbs has three different pronunciations. Listen to the examples. Then put the verbs you hear in the correct column.

/t/	/d/	/ɪd/
<b>worked</b>	<b>lived</b>	<b>started</b>

## THE END OF THE 20TH CENTURY

### Irregular verbs

- 1 Look at the list of irregular verbs on p142. Write the Past Simple form of the verbs in the box. Which verb isn't irregular?

have _____	begin _____	come _____	go _____	do _____
leave _____	get _____	study _____	become _____	
win _____	lose _____	buy _____	meet _____	

- 2 **T 7.7** Listen and repeat the Past Simple forms.

- 3 **T 7.8** How old were you in 2000? Simon was twenty-four. Listen to him and complete the sentences.



### What did Simon do?

He \_\_\_\_\_ school in 1994. He \_\_\_\_\_ to university where he \_\_\_\_\_ graphic design. Then, in 1997, he \_\_\_\_\_ a job with Saatchi and Saatchi, an advertising agency in London. He \_\_\_\_\_ his girlfriend, Zoë, in 1998, and the next year they \_\_\_\_\_ a flat together.

### What happened in the world?

#### Sport

France \_\_\_\_\_ the World Cup in 1998.  
Brazil \_\_\_\_\_.

#### Politics

Tony Blair \_\_\_\_\_ Britain's Prime Minister in 1997. Bill Clinton \_\_\_\_\_ a lot of problems in his last years in the White House. Eleven countries in Europe (but not Britain) \_\_\_\_\_ to use the Euro in 1999.



#### Famous people

Princess Diana \_\_\_\_\_ in a car crash in Paris in 1997. Millions of people \_\_\_\_\_ to London for her funeral.



Listen again and check.

- 4 Work with a partner. Ask and answer questions about Simon.

- 1 When/Simon/leave school?
- 2 What/study at university?
- 3 When/a job with Saatchi and Saatchi?
- 4 When/meet Zoë?
- 5 What/Zoë and Simon do in 1999?

- 5 What did you do in the last years of the 20th century? What can you remember? Write about it. Tell the class.

## PRACTICE

### When did it happen?

- 1 Work in small groups. What important dates in the 20th century can you remember? What happened in the world? What happened in your country? Make a list of events. Then make questions to ask the other groups.

*When did the First World War begin/end?*

*When did the first person walk on the moon?*

### What did you do?

- 2 Look at these phrases.

!	last	night Monday week month year	yesterday	morning afternoon evening
<i>X last evening</i>				
<i>X last afternoon</i>				

- 3 Work with a partner. Ask and answer questions with *When did you last ... ?* Ask another question for more information.

*When did you last have a holiday?*

*Last August.*

*Where did you go?*

*To Spain.*

- have a holiday
- see a video
- go shopping
- give someone a kiss
- take a photograph
- go to a party
- lose something
- write a letter
- get a present
- have dinner in a restaurant

Tell the class some things you learned about your partner.

*Yukio had a holiday last August and she went to Italy.*

### Check it

- 4 Tick (✓) the correct sentence.

- 1  He bought some new shoes.  
 He buyed some new shoes.
- 2  Where did you go yesterday?  
 Where you went yesterday?
- 3  You see Jane last week?  
 Did you see Jane last week?
- 4  Did she get the job?  
 Did she got the job?
- 5  I went out yesterday evening.  
 I went out last evening.
- 6  He studied French at university.  
 He studyed French at university.
- 7  What had you for breakfast?  
 What did you have for breakfast?
- 8  I was in New York the last week.  
 I was in New York last week.

# READING AND SPEAKING

## Two famous firsts

- 1 Translate these words.

**nouns**

grocer slaves politician twins widow (in) tears

**verbs**

agree bomb grow fight own resign survive

- 2 Look at the photographs and complete these sentences.

George Washington was the first \_\_\_\_\_.

Margaret Thatcher was the first \_\_\_\_\_.

What else do you know about these people?

- 3 Work in two groups.

**Group A** Read about George Washington.

**Group B** Read about Margaret Thatcher.

- 4 Are the sentences true (✓) or false (✗) about your person? Correct the false sentences.

- 1 He/She came from a rich family.
- 2 He/She loved being a politician.
- 3 He/She worked hard.
- 4 He/She had a lot of other interests.
- 5 He/She had a good education.
- 6 He/She married, but didn't have any children.
- 7 He/She was in office for eight years.
- 8 Finally he/she was tired of politics and resigned.

- 5 Find a partner from the other group. Compare George Washington and Margaret Thatcher, using your answers.

- 6 Complete the questions about the other person. Then ask and answer them with your partner.

### About George Washington

- 1 How many jobs did he ... ?
- 2 When did he ... President?
- 3 What did he ... doing in his free time?
- 4 Did George and Martha have any ... ?
- 5 What ... he build?
- 6 How long ... he President?

### About Margaret Thatcher

- 7 What ... her father's job?
- 8 When did she ... Denis?
- 9 How many children did they ... ?
- 10 How much sleep ... she need?
- 11 When did the terrorists ... her hotel?
- 12 How long ... she Prime Minister?

### What do you think?

Who were famous leaders in your country?  
What did they do?



# Two Famous Firsts

## George Washington (1732–1799)

He was the first President of the United States. He became President in 1789, eight years after the American War of Independence.

### His early life

George was born in Virginia. His family owned a big farm and had slaves. George didn't have much education. During his life he had three jobs: he was a farmer, a soldier, and a politician. He loved the life of a farmer. He grew tobacco and owned horses. He worked hard but he also liked dancing and going to the theatre. In 1759 he married a widow called Martha Custis. They were happy together, but didn't have any children.

### His later life

He was Commander-in-Chief of the army and fought the British in the War of Independence. When the war ended in 1781 he was happy to go back to the farm, but his country wanted him to be President. Finally, in 1789, he became President, and gave his name to the new capital city. He started the building of the White House, but he never lived in it. By 1797 he was tired of politics. He went back to his farm and died there two years later.



## Margaret Thatcher (1925– )

She was the first woman prime minister in Europe. She became Prime Minister of Britain in 1979.

### Her early life

She was born above a shop in the small English town of Grantham. Her father, Alfred Roberts, was a grocer. He worked very hard for little money. Margaret also worked hard, and she went to Oxford University, where she studied chemistry. In 1951 she married Denis Thatcher, a rich businessman. They had twins, a girl and a boy. The love of her life was politics. She didn't have much time for other interests. She said she only needed four hours' sleep a night.

### Her later life

She became a politician in 1959, leader of the Conservative Party in 1975, and Prime Minister of Britain four years after that. She had a strong personality. A lot of people were afraid of her, and she was called 'The Iron Lady'. In 1984 Irish terrorists bombed her hotel, but she survived. She was Prime Minister for eleven years. She finally resigned in 1990, but she didn't want to, and she was in tears when she left 10 Downing Street.



# VOCABULARY AND PRONUNCIATION

## Spelling and silent letters

- 1 There are many silent letters in English words. Here are some words from the reading texts on p57. Practise saying them.

bomb /bɒm/      widow /'wɪdəʊ/  
hard /ha:d/      fought /fɔ:t/

Cross out the silent letters in these words.

- |          |             |
|----------|-------------|
| 1 walk   | 7 work      |
| 2 listen | 8 war       |
| 3 know   | 9 island    |
| 4 write  | 10 build    |
| 5 eight  | 11 resign   |
| 6 farm   | 12 daughter |

**T 7.9** Listen and check. Practise saying the words.

- 2 Look at the phonetic spelling of these words from exercise 1. Write the words.

- 1 /wɜ:k/ work  
 2 /fɪ:m/   
 3 /'lɪsən/   
 4 /bɪld/   
 5 /raɪt/   
 6 /dɔ:tə/

- 3 Write the words. They all have silent letters.

- 1 /bɔ:n/   
 2 /bɔ:t/   
 3 /wɜ:ld/   
 4 /'a:nəsə/   
 5 /naɪvz/   
 6 /rɒŋ/   
 7 /'kʌbəd/   
 8 /'krɪsməs/

**T 7.10** Listen and practise saying the words.

# EVERDAY ENGLISH

## Special occasions

- 1 Look at the list of days. Which are special? Match the special days with the pictures. Do you have the same customs in your country?



***birthday***  
***Monday***  
***wedding day***  
***Christmas Day***  
***yesterday***  
***New Year's Eve***  
***Easter Day***  
***tomorrow***  
***Mother's Day***  
***today***  
***Thanksgiving***  
***Valentine's Day***  
***Friday***  
***Hallowe'en***



**2** Complete the conversations. What are the occasions?

- A Ugh! Work again! I hate \_\_\_\_\_ mornings!  
 B Me, too. Did you have a nice weekend?  
 A Yes. It was brilliant.
- 2 Happy \_\_\_\_\_ to you.  
 Happy \_\_\_\_\_ to you.  
 Happy \_\_\_\_\_, dear Tommy,  
 Happy \_\_\_\_\_ to you.
- 3 A Did you get any \_\_\_\_\_ cards?  
 B Yes, I did. Listen to this.  
*Roses are red. Violets are blue.*  
*You are my \_\_\_\_\_*  
*And I love you.*
- A Oooh-er! Do you know who it's from?  
 B No idea!
- 4 A Congratulations!  
 B Oh ... thank you very much.  
 A When's the happy day?  
 B Pardon?  
 A Your \_\_\_\_\_ day. When is it?  
 B Oh! We're not sure. Perhaps some time in June.
- 5 A It's midnight! Happy \_\_\_\_\_ everybody!  
 B Happy \_\_\_\_\_!  
 C Happy \_\_\_\_\_!
- 6 A Thank goodness! It's \_\_\_\_\_!  
 B Yeah. Have a nice weekend!  
 A Same to you.

**T 7.11** Listen and check. Practise the conversations with a partner.

**3 T 7.12** Listen and answer.

# 8

# How long ago?

Past Simple 2 – negatives/ago • Which word is different? • What's the date?

## STARTER

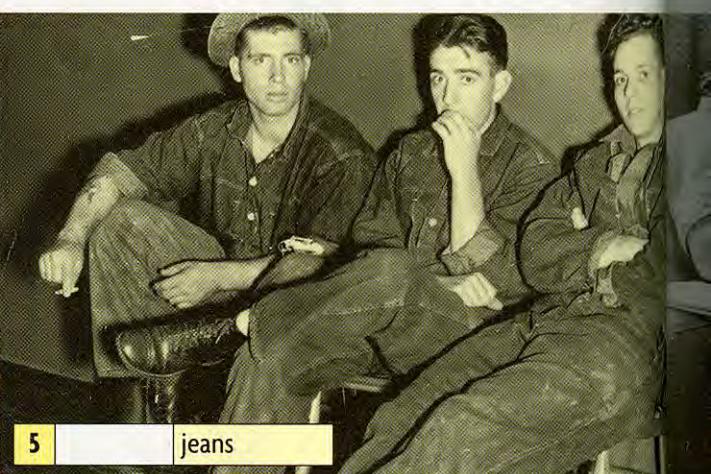
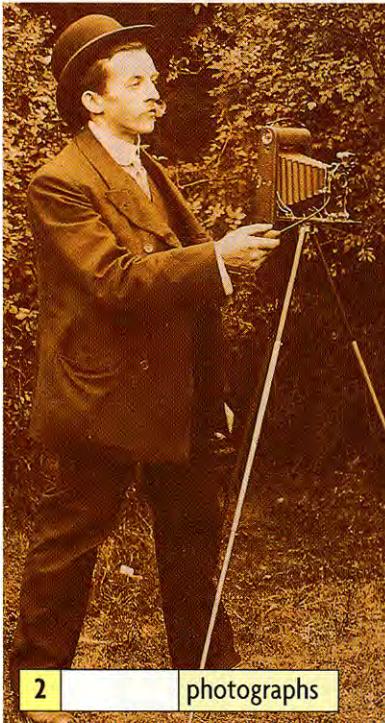
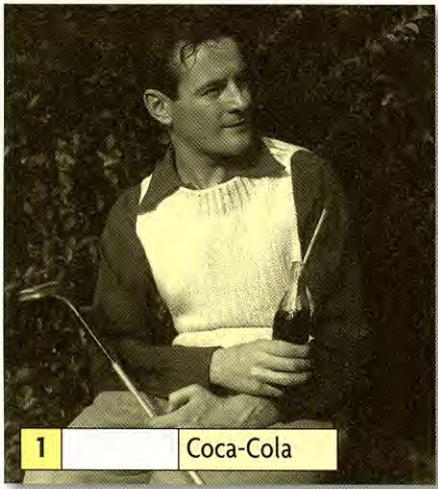
What is the Past Simple of these verbs? Most of them are irregular.

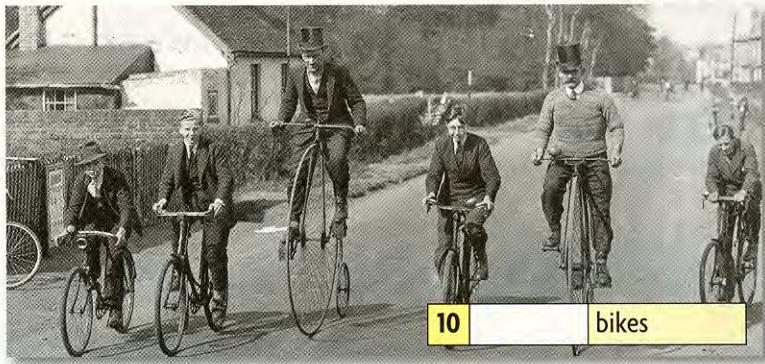
eat drink drive fly listen to make ride take watch wear

## FAMOUS INVENTIONS

Past Simple negatives/ago

- 1 Match the verbs from the Starter with the photographs.





- 2** Work in groups. What year was it one hundred years ago? Ask and answer questions about the things in the pictures. What did people do? What didn't they do?

*Did people drive cars one hundred years ago?*

*Yes, I think they did.*

*I'm not sure.*

*No, they didn't.*

- 3** Tell the class the things you think people did and didn't do.

*We think people drove cars, but they didn't watch TV.*

- 4** Your teacher knows the exact dates when these things were invented. Ask your teacher about them. Write down the dates. How many years ago was it?

S When were cars invented?

T In 1893.

S That's ... years ago.

## GRAMMAR SPOT

Write the Past Simple forms.

### Present Simple

I live in London.

He lives in London.

Do you live in London?

Does she live in London?

I don't live in London.

He doesn't live in London.

### Past Simple

I lived in London.

► Grammar Reference 8.1 and 8.2 p129

# PRACTICE

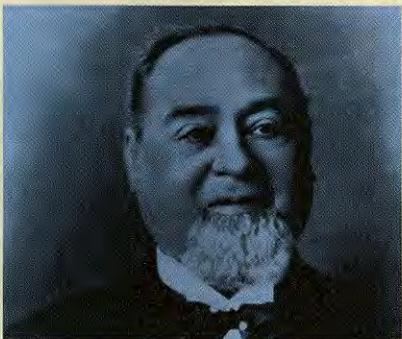
## Three inventors

- 1 **T 8.1** The dates in the texts are *all* incorrect.  
Read and listen, and correct the dates.

*They didn't make the first jeans in 1923. They made them in 1873.*

### Jeans

Two Americans, Jacob Davis and **Levi Strauss**, made the first jeans in 1923. Davis bought cloth from Levi's shop. He told Levi that he had a special way to make strong trousers for workmen. The first jeans were blue. In 1965 jeans became fashionable for women after they saw them in *Vogue* magazine. In the 1990s, Calvin Klein earned \$12.5 million a week from jeans.



### Television



A Scotsman, **John Logie Baird**, transmitted the first television picture on 25 November, 1905. The first thing on television was a boy who worked in the office next to Baird's workroom in London. In 1929 Baird sent pictures from London to Glasgow. In 1940 he sent pictures to New York, and also produced the first colour TV pictures.

### Aspirin

**Felix Hofmann**, a 29-year-old chemist who worked for the German company Bayer, invented the drug Aspirin in April 1879. He gave the first aspirin to his father for his arthritis. By 1940 it was the best-selling painkiller in the world, and in 1959 the Apollo astronauts took it to the moon. The Spanish philosopher, José Ortega y Gasset, called the 20th century 'The Age of Aspirin'.



- 2 Make these sentences negative. Then give the correct answers.

- 1 Two Germans made the first jeans.

*Two Germans didn't make the first jeans. Two Americans made them.*

- 2 Davis sold cloth in Levi's shop.

- 3 Women saw pictures of jeans in *She* magazine.

- 4 Baird sent pictures from London to Paris.

- 5 Felix Hofmann gave the first aspirin to his mother.

- 6 A Spanish philosopher called the 19th century 'The Age of Aspirin'.

- T 8.2** Listen and check. Practise the stress and intonation.

## Did you know that?

- 3 **T 8.3** Read and listen to the conversations. Then listen and repeat.

- A Did you know that Marco Polo brought spaghetti back from China?

- B Really? He didn't! That's incredible!

- A Well, it's true!



- C Did you know that Napoleon was afraid of cats?

- D He wasn't! I don't believe it!

- C Well, it's true!

- 4 Work with a partner. Look at the lists of more incredible information from your teacher. Have similar conversations.



## VOCABULARY AND PRONUNCIATION

### Which word is different?

1 Which word is different? Why?

1 orange apple **chicken** banana

**Chicken** is different because it isn't a fruit.

2 hamburger sandwich pizza recipe

3 television dishwasher vacuum cleaner washing machine

4 wrote kissed threw found

5 fax e-mail CD player mobile phone

6 brown green delicious blue

7 face eye mouth leg

8 talk speak chat laugh

9 century clock season month

10 funny shy nervous worried

11 fall in love get married get engaged go to a party

6 Work with a partner. Ask and answer questions with *When ... ?* Use a time expression and *ago* in the answer.

When did you get up?

At seven o'clock,  
three hours ago.

When did this term start?

In September,  
two months ago.

When did ... ?

- you get up
- you have breakfast
- you arrive at school
- you start learning English
- you start at this school
- this term start
- you last use a computer
- you learn to ride a bicycle
- your parents get married
- you last eat a hamburger
- you last have a coffee break

7 Tell the class about your day so far.  
Begin like this.

I got up at seven o'clock, had breakfast,  
and left the house at ...

2 Look at the phonetic spelling of these words from exercise 1. Practise saying them.

1 /'resəpi/

6 /'wʌrɪd/

2 /tʃæt/

7 /dr'ɪʃəs/

3 /ʃai/

8 /'sænwɪdʒ/

4 /'fʌni/

9 /mə'fi:n/

5 /feis/

10 /'sentʃəri/

**T 8.4** Listen and check.

3 Complete the sentences with a word from exercise 1.

1 A Why didn't you \_\_\_\_\_ at my joke?

B Because it wasn't very \_\_\_\_\_. That's why!

2 A Hello. Hello. I can't hear you. Who is it?

B It's me, Jonathon ... JONATHON! I'm on my \_\_\_\_\_.  
A Oh, Jonathon! Hi! Sorry, I can't \_\_\_\_\_ now. I'm in a hurry.

3 A Good luck in your exams!

B Oh, thank you. I always get so \_\_\_\_\_ before exams.

4 A Mmmmm! Did you make this chocolate cake?

B I did. Do you like it?

A Like it? I *love* it. It's \_\_\_\_\_. Can I have the \_\_\_\_\_?

5 A Come on, Tommy. Say hello to Auntie Mavis. Don't be \_\_\_\_\_.

B Hello, Auntie Mavis.

**T 8.5** Listen and check. Practise the conversations.

# LISTENING AND SPEAKING

How did you two meet?

1 Put the sentences in the correct order. There is more than one answer!

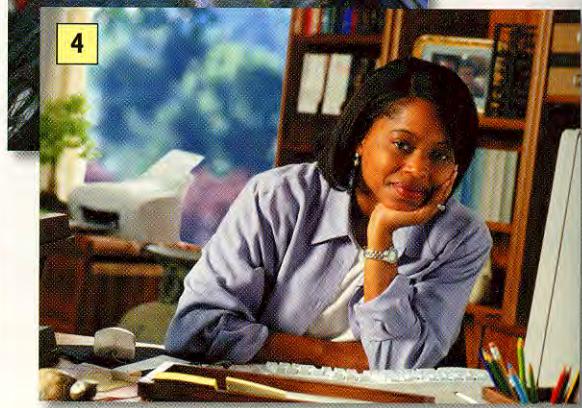
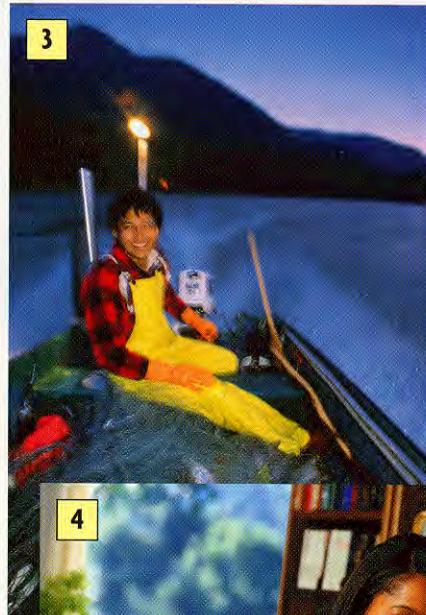
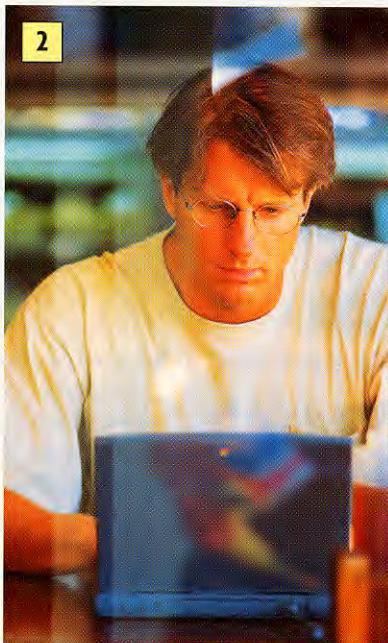
- |  |  |
|--|--|
| <input type="checkbox"/> They got married.                         | <input type="checkbox"/> They chatted for a long time. |
| <input type="checkbox"/> They fell in love.                        | <input type="checkbox"/> They had two children.        |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Wilma and Carl met at a party. | <input type="checkbox"/> They kissed.                  |
| <input type="checkbox"/> He invited her to meet his parents.       | <input type="checkbox"/> They got engaged.             |

2 Look at the four people and discuss the questions.

The people are:

- **Vincent Banks** from America
- **Per Olafson** from Norway
- **Debbie Grant** from England
- **Rosa Randeiro** from Spain

- 1 Who do you think is who? Why?
- 2 Who do you think are husband and wife? Why?
- 3 How do you think they met?



3 Read the introductions to the stories of how they met. What do you think happened next?

## LOVE ON THE INTERNET

Nowadays love on the Internet is big business. Millions try to find true love there every day. Per Olafson from Bergen in Norway, and Debbie Grant from Banbury in England, looked for love that way ...

## LOVE IN A BOTTLE

Fisherman Vincent Banks from Cape Cod in America couldn't find a wife, so he wrote a letter, put it in a bottle and threw it into the sea. Ten years later and five thousand miles away in Spain, Rosa Randeiro found the bottle on the beach ...

## EVERDAY ENGLISH

**4 T 8.6** Now listen to them talking. Were your ideas correct?

**5** Answer the questions about Per and Debbie, and Vincent and Rosa.

- 1 When did they meet?
  - 2 Why does Debbie like to chat on the Internet?
  - 3 Where was Vincent's letter? What did it say?
  - 4 Why couldn't Rosa read the letter?
  - 5 Do both couples have children?
  - 6 Who says these sentences?  
Write P, D, V, R in the boxes.
- a  I'm really quite shy.  
 I was very shy.
- b  I find it difficult to talk to people face to face.  
 I flew to America and we met face to face.
- c  I stood on something.  
 I stood there with some flowers.
- d  We chatted on the Internet for a year.  
 We wrote every week for six months.

### Speaking

**6** Imagine you are one of the people. Tell the story of how you met your husband/wife.

**7** Look at the questions. Tell a partner about you and your family.

- 1 Are you married or do you have a girlfriend/boyfriend? How did you meet?
- 2 When did your parents or grandparents meet? Where? How?

What's the date?



**1** Write the correct word next to the numbers.

fourth	twelfth	sixth	twentieth	second	thirtieth	thirteenth
thirty-first	fifth	seventeenth	tenth	sixteenth	first	third
twenty-first						

1st	_____	6th	_____	17th	_____
2nd	_____	10th	_____	20th	_____
3rd	_____	12th	_____	21st	_____
4th	_____	13th	_____	30th	_____
5th	_____	16th	_____	31st	_____

**T 8.7** Listen and practise saying the ordinals.

**2** Ask and answer questions with a partner about the months of the year.

Which is the first month?

January.



We write: 3/4/1999 or 3 April 1999

We say: 'The third of April, nineteen ninety-nine.' or 'April the third, nineteen ninety-nine.'

Notice how we say these years:

1900 nineteen hundred  
 1905 nineteen oh five  
 2001 two thousand and one

**3** Practise saying these dates:

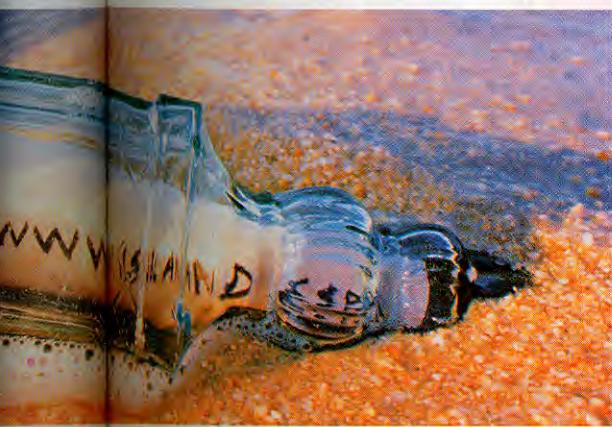
1 April 2 March 17 September 19 November 23 June  
 29/2/76 19/12/83 3/10/99 31/5/2000 15/7/2004

**T 8.8** Listen and check.

**4 T 8.9** Listen and write the dates you hear.

**5** Ask and answer the questions with your partner.

- 1 What's the date today?
- 2 When did this school course start? When does it end?
- 3 When's Christmas Day?
- 4 When's Valentine's Day?
- 5 When's Mother's Day this year?
- 6 When's American Independence Day?
- 7 What century is it now?
- 8 What are the dates of public holidays in your country?
- 9 When were you born?
- 10 When's your birthday?



# 9

# Food you like!

Count and uncount nouns • I like/I'd like • much/many • Food • Polite requests

## STARTER

What's your favourite • fruit? • vegetable? • drink?

Write your answers. Compare them with a partner, then with the class.

## FOOD AND DRINK

Count and uncount nouns

1 Match the food and drink with the pictures.

A	B
<input type="checkbox"/> tea	<input type="checkbox"/> apples
<input type="checkbox"/> coffee	<input type="checkbox"/> oranges
<input type="checkbox"/> wine	<input type="checkbox"/> bananas
<input type="checkbox"/> beer	<input type="checkbox"/> strawberries
<input type="checkbox"/> apple juice	<input type="checkbox"/> peas
<input type="checkbox"/> spaghetti	<input type="checkbox"/> carrots
<input type="checkbox"/> yoghurt	<input type="checkbox"/> tomatoes
<input type="checkbox"/> pizza	<input type="checkbox"/> hamburgers
<input type="checkbox"/> cheese	<input type="checkbox"/> chips
<input type="checkbox"/> chocolate	<input type="checkbox"/> biscuits



### GRAMMAR SPOT

- 1 Which list in exercise 1 has plural nouns, A or B?  
 2 Look at the pairs of sentences. What is the difference?

A

Chocolate is delicious.

Apple juice is good for you.

B

Strawberries are delicious.

Apples are good for you.

- 3 Can we count apple juice? Can we count apples?

► Grammar Reference 9.1 p130

- 2 T 9.1** Listen to Daisy and Tom talking about what they like and don't like. Tick (✓) the food and drink in the lists on p66 that they both like.

Who says these things? Write D or T.

- I don't like wine but I like beer.
- I really like apple juice. It's delicious.
- I quite like peas.
- I don't like tomatoes very much.
- I don't like cheese at all.

- 3** Talk about the lists of food and drink with a partner. What do you like? What do you quite like? What don't you like?

*I like ... and I'd like ...*

- 1 T 9.2** Read and listen to the conversation.

- A Would you like some tea or coffee?  
B I'd like a cold drink, please, if that's OK.  
A Of course. Would you like some orange juice?  
B Yes, please. I'd love some.  
A And would you like a biscuit?  
B No, thanks. Just orange juice is fine.

### GRAMMAR SPOT

- 1** Look at the sentences. What is the difference?
- |                  |                                     |
|------------------|-------------------------------------|
| <b>A</b>         | <b>B</b>                            |
| Do you like tea? | Would you like some tea?            |
| I like biscuits. | I'd like a biscuit. (I'd = I would) |
- Which sentences, **A** or **B**, mean *Do you want/I want ...?*

- 2** Look at these sentences.
- I'd like some bananas. (plural noun)  
I'd like some mineral water. (uncount noun)
- We use *some* with both plural and uncount nouns.

- 3** Look at these questions.
- Would you like *some* chips?  
Can I have *some* tea?  
**but** Are there *any* chips?  
Is there *any* tea?

We use *some* not *any* when we request and offer things.  
We use *any* not *some* in other questions and negatives.

►► Grammar Reference 9.2 p130



- 2** Practise the conversation in exercise 1 with a partner. Then have similar conversations about other food and drink.

*Would you like some tea?*

*No, thanks. I don't like tea very much.*

# PRACTICE

## a or some?

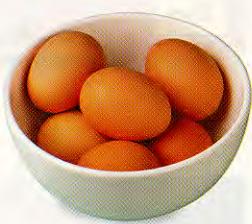
1 Write *a*, *an*, or *some*.

- 1 a strawberry
- 2 some fruit
- 3    mushroom
- 4    bread
- 5    milk
- 6    meat

2 Write *a*, *an*, or *some*.



1    egg



2    eggs



3    (cup of) coffee



4    coffee



5    cake



6    cake



7    ice-cream



8    ice-cream

## Questions and answers

3 Choose *Would/Do you like ... ?* or *I/I'd like ...* to complete the conversations.

- |   |   |                                 |
|---|---|---------------------------------|
| <input type="checkbox"/> Would you like | <input type="checkbox"/> Do you like    | a cigarette?                    |
| <input type="checkbox"/>                | <input type="checkbox"/>                | No, thanks. I don't smoke.      |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Do you like    | <input type="checkbox"/> Would you like | your teacher?                   |
| <input type="checkbox"/>                | <input type="checkbox"/>                | Yes. She's very nice.           |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Do you like    | <input type="checkbox"/> Would you like | a drink?                        |
| <input type="checkbox"/>                | <input type="checkbox"/>                | Yes, please. Some Coke, please. |
| 4 Can I help you?                       |   |                                 |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Yes. I like    | <input type="checkbox"/> Yes. I'd like  | a book of stamps, please.       |
| <input type="checkbox"/>                | <input type="checkbox"/>                |                                 |
| 5 What sports do you do?                |   |                                 |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Well, I'd like | <input type="checkbox"/> Well, I like   | swimming very much.             |
| 6 Excuse me, are you ready to order?    |   |                                 |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Yes. I like    | <input type="checkbox"/> Yes. I'd like  | a steak, please.                |
| <input type="checkbox"/>                | <input type="checkbox"/>                |                                 |

**T 9.3** Listen and check. Practise the conversations with a partner.

**4 T 9.4** Listen to the questions and choose the correct answers.

- 1  I like all sorts of fruit.  
 Yes. I'd like some fruit, please.
- 2  I'd like a book by John Grisham.  
 I like books by John Grisham.
- 3  I'd like a new bike.  
 I like riding my bike.
- 4  I'd like a cat but not a dog.  
 I like cats, but I don't like dogs.
- 5  I like French wine, especially red wine.  
 We'd like a bottle of French red wine.
- 6  No, thanks. I don't like ice-cream.  
 I'd like some ice-cream, please.

**T 9.5** Listen and check. Practise the conversations with your partner.

# GOING SHOPPING

some/any, much/many

- 1 What is there in Miss Potts's shop?  
Talk about the picture. Use  
some/any, and not much/not many.

*There's some yoghurt.*

*There aren't any carrots.*

*There isn't much coffee.*

*There aren't many eggs.*

## GRAMMAR SPOT

- 1 We use *many* with count nouns in questions and negatives.

**How many** eggs are there?  
There **aren't** **many** eggs.

- 2 We use *much* with uncount nouns in questions and negatives.

**How much** coffee is there?  
There **isn't** **much** coffee.

►► Grammar Reference 9.3 p130

- 2 Ask and answer questions about what there is in the shop with a partner.

*Are there any eggs?*

*Yes, there are some,  
but there aren't many.*

*Is there any coffee?*

*Yes, there is some, but there isn't much.*

- 3 T 9.6 Look at Barry's shopping list.  
Listen and tick (✓) the things he buys.  
Why doesn't he buy the other things?

### THINGS TO BUY

Orange juice	Cheese	Apples
Milk	Pizza	
Coffee	Bread	



## PRACTICE

### ***much or many?***

1 Complete the questions using *much* or *many*.

- 1 How \_\_\_\_\_ people are there in the room?
- 2 How \_\_\_\_\_ money do you have in your pocket?
- 3 How \_\_\_\_\_ cigarettes do you smoke?
- 4 How \_\_\_\_\_ petrol is there in the car?
- 5 How \_\_\_\_\_ apples do you want?
- 6 How \_\_\_\_\_ wine is there in the fridge?

2 Choose an answer for each question in exercise 1.

- a A kilo.
- b There are two bottles.
- c Ten a day.
- d Just fifty pence.
- e Twenty. Nine men and eleven women.
- f It's full.

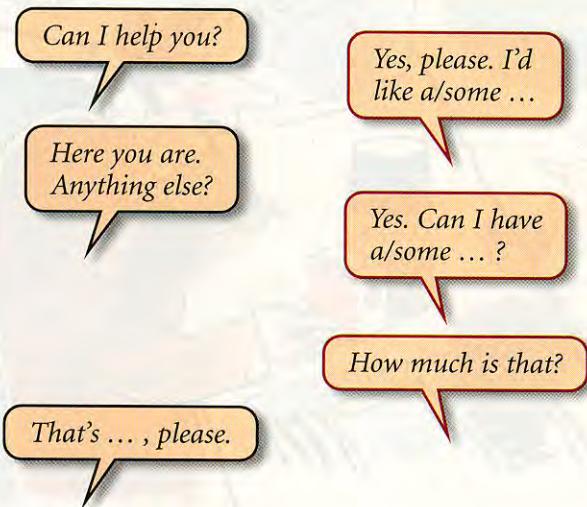
### **Check it**

3 Correct the sentences.

- 1 How **much** apples do you want? **X**  
**How many apples do you want?**
- 2 I don't like an ice-cream.
- 3 Can I have a bread, please?
- 4 I'm hungry. I like a sandwich.
- 5 I don't have many milk left.
- 6 I'd like some fruits, please.
- 7 How many money do you have?
- 8 We have lot of homework today.

### **Roleplay**

4 Work with a partner. Make a shopping list each and roleplay conversations between Miss Potts and a customer.



## READING AND SPEAKING

### **Food around the world**

- 1 Which food and drink comes from your country? Which foreign food and drink is popular in your country?
- 2 Can you identify any places or nationalities in the photographs? What else can you see?
- 3 Read the text. Write the correct question heading for each paragraph.

WHERE DOES OUR FOOD COME FROM?

WHAT DO WE EAT?

HOW DO WE EAT?

- 4 Answer the questions.

- 1 When did human history start? Was it about 10,000 years ago or was it about 1 million years ago?
- 2 Do they eat much rice in the south of China?
- 3 Why do the Scandinavians and the Portuguese eat a lot of fish?
- 4 Why don't the Germans eat much fish?
- 5 Which countries have many kinds of sausages?
- 6 How many courses are there in China?
- 7 How do people eat in the Middle East?
- 8 Why can we eat strawberries at any time of the year?

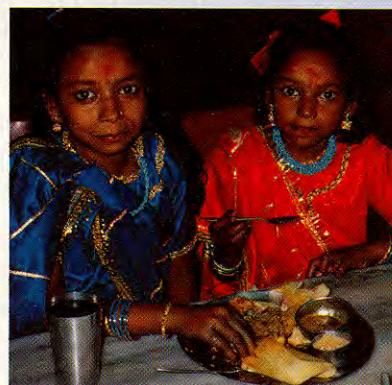
### **Speaking**

5 Work in small groups and discuss these questions about your country.

- 1 What is a typical breakfast?
- 2 What does your family have for breakfast?
- 3 Is lunch or dinner the main meal of the day?
- 4 What is a typical main meal?

### **Writing**

6 Write a paragraph about meals in your country.





# FOOD AROUND THE WORLD

For 99% of human history, people took their food from the world around them. They ate all that they could find, and then moved on. Then about 10,000 years ago, or for 1% of human history, people learned to farm the land and control their environment.

The kind of food we eat depends on which part of the world we live in, or which part of our country we live in. For example, in the south of China they eat rice, but in the north they eat noodles. In Scandinavia, they eat a lot of herrings, and the Portuguese love sardines. But in central Europe, away from the sea, people don't eat so much fish, they eat more meat and sausages. In Germany and Poland there are hundreds of different kinds of sausages.

In North America, Australia, and Europe there are two or more courses to every meal and people eat with knives and forks.

In China there is only one course, all the food is together on the table, and they eat with chopsticks.

In parts of India and the Middle East people use their fingers and bread to pick up the food.



# LISTENING AND SPEAKING

## My favourite food

- 1 Look at the photographs of different food. Where is it from? Which do you like?



- 2 **T 9.7** Listen and match each person with their favourite food.

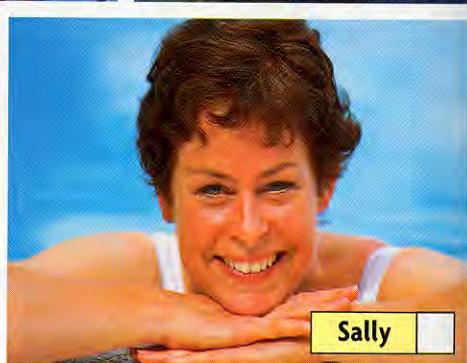


- 3 Answer these questions about the people.

Who ... ?

- travels a lot
- likes sweet things
- had her favourite food on holiday
- prefers vegetables
- likes food from his own country

- 4 What's your favourite food? Is it from your country or from another country?



# EVERDAY ENGLISH

## Polite requests

- 1 What can you see in the photograph?



- 2 Match the questions and responses.

Would you like some more carrots?  
Could you pass the salt, please?  
Could I have a glass of water, please?  
Does anybody want more dessert?  
How would you like your coffee?  
This is delicious! Can you give me the recipe?  
Do you want help with the washing-up?

Black, no sugar, please.  
Yes, of course. I'm glad you like it.  
Do you want fizzy or still?  
Yes, please. They're delicious.  
Yes, of course. Here you are.  
Yes, please. I'd love some. It's delicious.  
No, of course not. We have a dishwasher.



We use *Can/Could I ... ?* to ask for things.  
*Can I have a glass of water?*  
*Could I have a glass of water?*  
We use *Can/Could you ... ?* to ask other people to do things for us.

*Can you give me the recipe?*  
*Could you pass the salt?*

- T 9.8 Listen and check. Practise the questions and responses with a partner.

- 3 Complete these requests with *Can/Could I ... ?* or *Can/Could you ... ?*

- 1 \_\_\_\_\_ have a cheese sandwich, please?      5 \_\_\_\_\_ lend me some money, please?  
2 \_\_\_\_\_ tell me the time, please?      6 \_\_\_\_\_ help me with my homework, please?  
3 \_\_\_\_\_ take me to school?      7 \_\_\_\_\_ borrow your dictionary, please?  
4 \_\_\_\_\_ see the menu, please?

- 4 Practise the requests with a partner. Give an answer for each request.

*Can I have a cheese sandwich, please?*

*Yes, of course. That's £1.75.*

- T 9.9 Listen and compare your answers.

# 10

# Bigger and better!

Comparatives and superlatives • have got • Town and country • Directions 2

## STARTER

Work with a partner. Who is taller? Who is older? Tell the class.

*I'm taller and older than Maria. She's smaller and younger than me.*

## CITY LIFE

### Comparative adjectives

- Match an adjective with its opposite.  
Which adjectives describe life in the city?  
Which describe life in the country?
- Make sentences comparing life in the city and country.

The city is	cheaper	than the country.
The country is	safer	than the city.
	noisier	
	dirtier	
	more expensive	
	more exciting	

Adjective	Opposite
fast	cheap
big	slow
dirty	friendly
dangerous	clean
noisy	quiet
modern	old
unfriendly	safe
exciting	boring
expensive	small

- T 10.1** Listen and repeat. Be careful with the sound /ə/.

/ə/                    /ə//ə/            /ə/ /ə/            /ə/

*The country is cheaper and safer than the city.*

- What do you think? Tell the class.

*I think it's safer in the country,  
but the city's more exciting.*

### GRAMMAR SPOT

- Complete these comparatives. What are the rules?

I'm \_\_\_\_\_ (old) than you.

Your class is \_\_\_\_\_ (noisy) than my class.

Your car was \_\_\_\_\_ (expensive) than my car.

- What are the comparatives of the adjectives in exercise 1?

- The comparatives of *good* and *bad* are irregular. What are they?

good \_\_\_\_\_      bad \_\_\_\_\_

►► Grammar Reference 10.1 p131



## PRACTICE

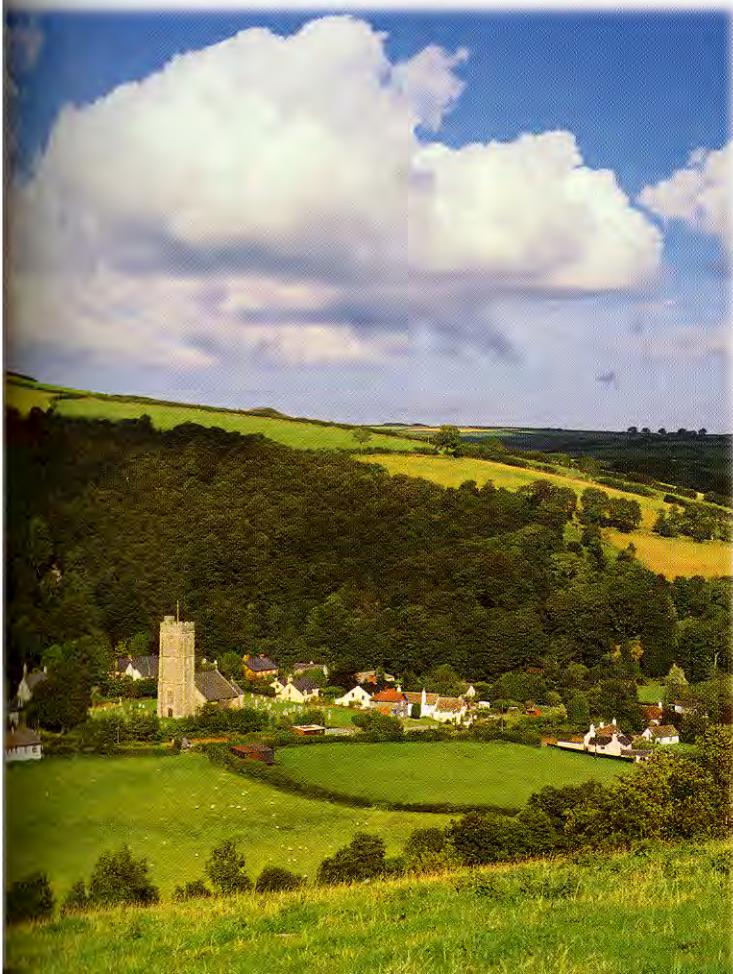
### Much more than . . .

1 Complete the conversations with the correct form of the adjectives.

- 1 A Life in the country is slower than city life. (slow)  
B Yes, the city's much faster. (fast)
- 2 A New York is \_\_\_\_\_ London. (safe)  
B No, it isn't. New York is much \_\_\_\_\_.  
\_\_\_\_\_ . (dangerous)
- 3 A Paris is \_\_\_\_\_ Madrid. (big)  
B No, it isn't! It's much \_\_\_\_\_. (small)
- 4 A Madrid is \_\_\_\_\_ Rome.  
(expensive)  
B No, it isn't. Madrid is much \_\_\_\_\_. (cheap)
- 5 A The buildings in Rome are \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_ the buildings in New York. (modern)  
B No, they aren't. They're much \_\_\_\_\_. (old)
- 6 A The Underground in London is \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_ the Metro in Paris. (good)  
B No! The Underground is much \_\_\_\_\_. (bad)

**T 10.2** Listen and check. Practise with a partner.

2 Work with a partner. Compare two towns or cities that you both know. Which do you like better? Why?



## COUNTRY LIFE

### have got

1 **T 10.3** Mel moved to Seacombe, a small country town near the sea. Read and listen to Mel's conversation with her friend Tara. Complete it with the correct adjectives.

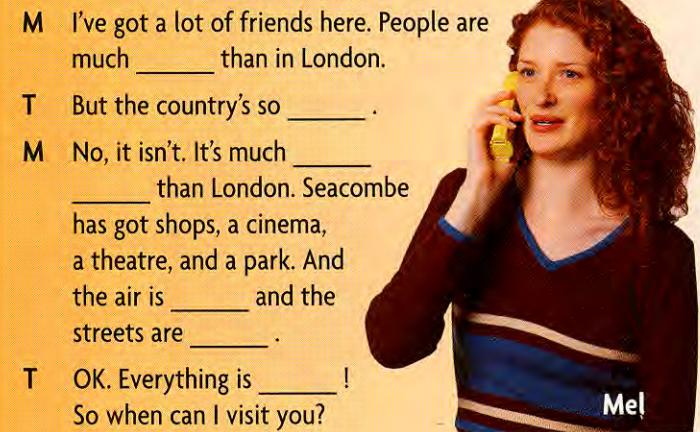
**T** Why did you leave London? You had a \_\_\_\_\_ job.  
**M** Yes, but I've got a \_\_\_\_\_ job here.  
**T** And you had a \_\_\_\_\_ flat in London.  
**M** Well, I've got a \_\_\_\_\_ flat here.  
**T** Really? How many bedrooms has it got?  
**M** Three. And it's got a garden.  
It's \_\_\_\_\_ than my flat in London and it's \_\_\_\_\_.  
**T** But you haven't got any friends!

**M** I've got a lot of friends here. People are much \_\_\_\_\_ than in London.

**T** But the country's so \_\_\_\_\_.  
**M** No, it isn't. It's much \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_ than London. Seacombe has got shops, a cinema, a theatre, and a park. And the air is \_\_\_\_\_ and the streets are \_\_\_\_\_.

**T** OK. Everything is \_\_\_\_\_.  
So when can I visit you?



### GRAMMAR SPOT

1 *Have* and *have got* both express possession. We often use *have got* in spoken British English.

I have a dog. = I've got a dog. (I've = I have)  
He has a car. = He's got a car. (He's = He has)  
Do you have a dog? = Have you got a dog?  
Does she have a car? = Has she got a car?  
They don't have a flat. = They haven't got a flat.  
It doesn't have a garden. = It hasn't got a garden.

2 The past of both *have* and *have got* is *had*.

3 Find examples of *have got* and *had* in the conversation.

►►► Grammar Reference 10.2 p131

2 Practise the conversation with a partner.

## PRACTICE

### have/have got

- 1 Write the sentences again, using the correct form of *have got*.

- 1 London has a lot of parks.  
*London's got a lot of parks.*
- 2 I don't have much money.  
*I haven't got much money.*
- 3 I have a lot of homework tonight.
- 4 Do you have any homework?
- 5 Our school has a library, but it doesn't have any computers.
- 6 My parents have a new stereo.
- 7 Does your sister have a boyfriend?
- 8 I don't have a problem with this exercise.

### I've got more than you!

- 2 Work with a partner. You are both multi-millionaires. Your teacher has more information for you. Ask and answer questions to find out who is richer!

**Millionaire A**

*I've got four houses. How many have you got?*

*Five. I've got two in France, one in Miami, one in the Caribbean, and a castle in Scotland.*

*Well, I've got thirty cars!*

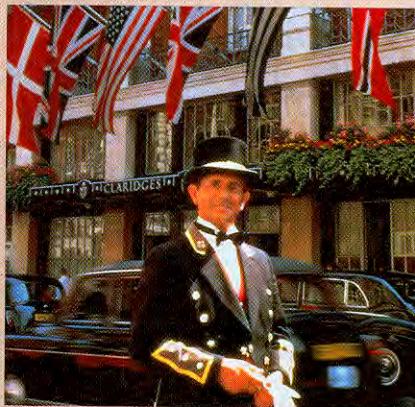
*That's nothing! I've got ...*



## THE WORLD'S BEST HOTELS

### Superlative adjectives

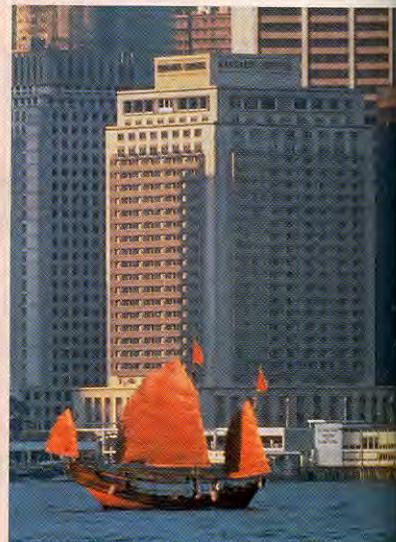
- 1 Read about the three hotels.



#### Claridge's

#### London

- 100 years old
- 292 rooms
- £315–£2,500 a night
- 35 mins Heathrow Airport
- no swimming pool



#### The Mandarin Oriental

#### Hong Kong

- 36 years old
- 542 rooms
- £300–£2,000 a night
- 30 mins Chek Lap Kok Airport
- swimming pool



#### The Plaza

#### New York

- 94 years old
- 812 rooms
- £200–£500 a night
- 45 mins Kennedy Airport
- no swimming pool

- 2 Correct the false sentences. How many correct sentences (✓) are there? What do you notice about them?

- 1 The Mandarin Oriental is cheaper than the Plaza. *No, it isn't. It's more expensive.* **X**
- 2 The Plaza is the cheapest. **✓**
- 3 Claridge's is the most expensive hotel.
- 4 The Mandarin Oriental is older than the Plaza.
- 5 Claridge's is the oldest hotel.
- 6 The Plaza is the biggest hotel.
- 7 The Mandarin Oriental is smaller than Claridge's.
- 8 The Plaza has got a swimming pool.
- 9 Claridge's is nearer the airport than the Mandarin.
- 10 The Mandarin is the nearest to the airport.
- 11 The Plaza is the furthest from the airport.

- 3 Which is the best hotel in or near your town? What has it got?

## GRAMMAR SPOT

- 1 Complete these superlative sentences. What's the rule?

The Green Palace is the \_\_\_\_\_ (cheap) hotel in New York.

The Four Seasons is the \_\_\_\_\_ (expensive).

- 2 Dictionaries often show irregular comparative and superlative forms of adjectives. Look at this:

**good /gʊd/ adj. (better, best)**

Complete these irregular forms:

**bad /bæd/ adj. (\_\_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_\_)**

**far /fɑ:/ adj. (\_\_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_\_)**

►► Grammar Reference 10.1 p131

## Talking about your class

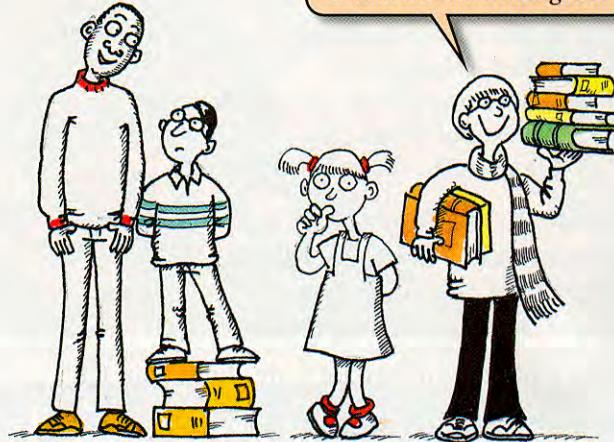
- 3 How well do you know the other students in your class? Describe them using these adjectives and others.

tall small old young intelligent funny

*I think Roger is the tallest in the class.  
He's taller than Carl.*

*Maria's the youngest.*

*I'm the most intelligent!*



## PRACTICE

### The biggest and best!

- 1 Complete the conversations using the superlative form of the adjective.

1 That house is very big.

Yes, \_\_\_\_\_ it's the **biggest house** \_\_\_\_\_ in the village.

2 Claridge's is a very expensive hotel.

Yes, \_\_\_\_\_ in London.

3 Castle Combe is a very pretty village.

Yes, \_\_\_\_\_ in England.

4 New York is a very cosmopolitan city.

Yes, \_\_\_\_\_ in the world.

5 Tom Hanks is a very popular film star.

Yes, \_\_\_\_\_ in America.

6 Miss Smith is a very funny teacher.

Yes, \_\_\_\_\_ in our school.

7 Anna is a very intelligent student.

Yes, \_\_\_\_\_ in the class.

8 This is a very easy exercise.

Yes, \_\_\_\_\_ in the book.

**T 10.4** Listen and check.

- 2 T 10.5** Close your books. Listen to the first lines in exercise 1 and give the answers.

- 4 Write the name of your favourite film star. Read it to the class. Compare the people. Which film star is the most popular in your class?

### Check it

- 5 Tick (✓) the correct sentence.

- 1  Yesterday was more hot than today.  
 Yesterday was hotter than today.
- 2  She's taller than her brother.  
 She's taller than her brother.
- 3  I'm the most young in the class.  
 I'm the youngest in the class.
- 4  Last week was busier than this week.  
 Last week was busier than this week.
- 5  He hasn't got any sisters.  
 He doesn't got any sisters.
- 6  Do you have any bread?  
 Do you got any bread?
- 7  My homework is the baddest in the class.  
 My homework is the worst in the class.
- 8  This exercise is the most difficult in the book.  
 This exercise is most difficult in the book.

# READING AND SPEAKING

## Three musical cities

- 1 **T 10.6** Listen to three types of music. What kind of music is it? Which music goes with which city?

New Orleans    Vienna    Liverpool

- 2 Where are these cities? What do you know about them? Each sentence is about one of them. Write NO, V, or L.

- 1  Its music, theatre, museums, and parks make it a popular tourist centre.
- 2  It stands on the banks of the Mississippi River.
- 3  It stands on the banks of the River Danube.
- 4  It is an important port for travel to Ireland.
- 5  In 1762, Louis XV gave it to his cousin Carlos of Spain.
- 6  Its university, founded in 1365, is one of the oldest in Europe.
- 7  It became an important trade centre for sugar, spices, and slaves.
- 8  Many Irish immigrants live there.

- 3 Work in three groups.

**Group 1** Read about New Orleans.

**Group 2** Read about Vienna.

**Group 3** Read about Liverpool.

Which sentences in exercise 2 are about your city?

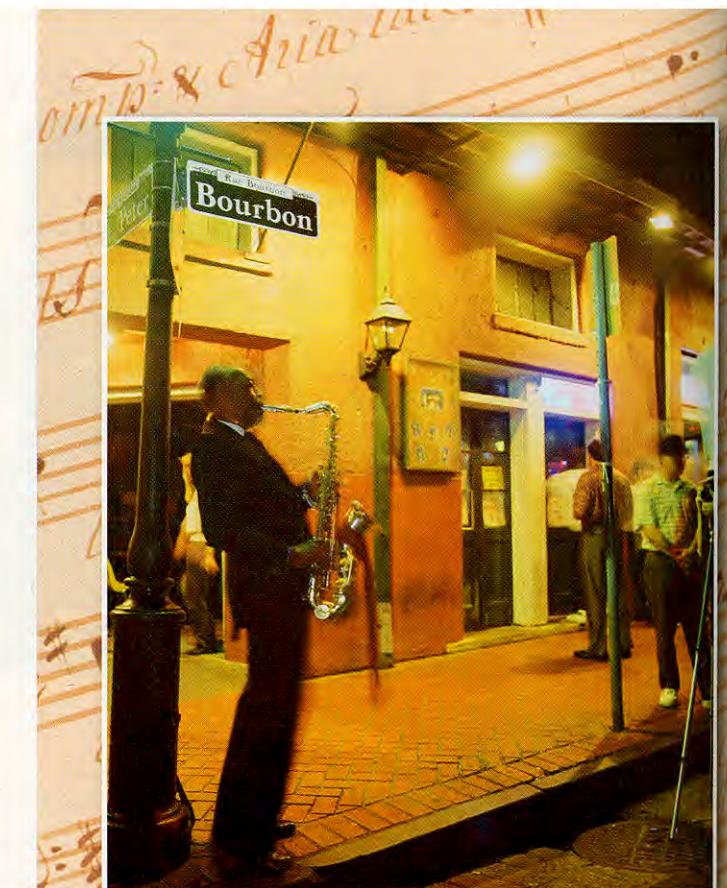
- 4 Answer the questions about your city.

- 1 How many people live there?
- 2 What is the name of its river?
- 3 Why is it a tourist centre?
- 4 What are some important dates in its history?
- 5 Which famous people lived there?
- 6 What kind of music is it famous for?
- 7 What is world famous about the city?
- 8 Which of these things can you do in the city you read about?
  - go by ship to Ireland
  - see Sigmund Freud's house
  - see a famous carnival
  - walk round the French Quarter
  - listen to a famous orchestra
  - visit the homes of a famous rock group

- 5 Find partners from the other two groups. Compare the cities, using your answers.

### Your home town

- 6 Write some similar information about your city, town, or village. Tell a partner or the class.



## New Orleans

New Orleans is the largest city in Louisiana, USA. It stands on the banks of the Mississippi River and is a busy port and tourist centre. Its population of about 550,000 is very cosmopolitan, with immigrants from many countries. Every year people from all over the world visit New Orleans to see its famous Mardi Gras carnival.

### Its history

In 1682 the French named Louisiana after the French King, Louis XIV. They built New Orleans in 1718. In 1762, Louis XV gave it to his cousin Carlos of Spain. Then, in 1800, it became French again until Napoleon sold it to the USA in 1803. The French Quarter in New Orleans still has many old buildings and excellent restaurants.

### Its music

New Orleans is the home of jazz. Jazz is a mixture of blues, dance songs, and hymns. Black musicians started to play jazz in the late 19th century. Louis Armstrong and Jelly Roll Morton came from the city. New Orleans is most famous for its jazz, but it also has a philharmonic orchestra.

# Vienna

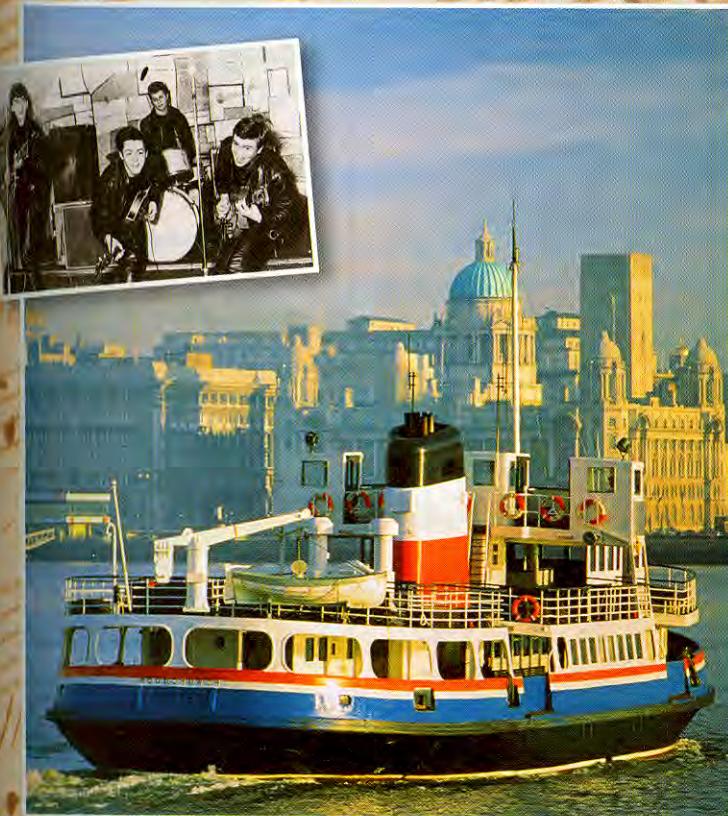
Vienna, or Wien in German, is the capital of Austria. It stands on the banks of the River Danube and is the gateway between east and west Europe. Its music, theatre, museums, and parks make it a popular tourist centre. It has a population of over 1,500,000.

## Its history

Vienna has a rich history. Its university opened in 1365, and is one of the oldest in Europe. From 1558 to 1806 it was the centre of the Holy Roman Empire and it became an important cultural centre for art and learning in the 18th and 19th centuries. The famous psychiatrist, Sigmund Freud, lived and worked there.

## Its music

Vienna was the music capital of the world for many centuries. Haydn, Mozart, Beethoven, Brahms, Schubert, and the Strauss family all came to work here. It is now the home of one of the world's most famous orchestras, the Vienna Philharmonic. Its State Opera House is also world famous.



# Liverpool

Liverpool is Britain's second biggest port, after London. It stands on the banks of the River Mersey in north-west England. It is an important passenger port for travel to Ireland and many Irish immigrants live there. It has a population of nearly 500,000.

## Its history

King John named Liverpool in 1207. The city grew bigger in the 18th century, when it became an important trade centre for sugar, spices, and slaves between Africa, Britain, the Americas, and the West Indies.

## Its music

Liverpool's most famous musicians are the Beatles. In the 1960s this British rock group was popular all over the world. They had 30 top ten hits. They were all born in Liverpool and started the group there in 1959. They first played at a night club called the Cavern and then travelled the world. One of them, Paul McCartney, is now the richest musician in the world. Many tourists visit Liverpool to see the homes of the Beatles.

## VOCABULARY AND PRONUNCIATION

### Town and country words

- 1 Find these words in the picture. Which things do you usually find in towns? Which in the country? Which in both? Put the words into the correct columns.

wood park museum church cathedral farm bridge car park port factory field theatre  
night club lake village hill mountain cottage building river bank tractor

Town	Country	Both



- 2 Complete the sentences with a word from exercise 1.

- 1 Everest is the highest \_\_\_\_\_ in the world.
- 2 The Golden Gate \_\_\_\_\_ in San Francisco is the longest \_\_\_\_\_ in the USA.
- 3 The Caspian Sea isn't a sea, it's the largest \_\_\_\_\_ in the world.
- 4 Rotterdam is the busiest \_\_\_\_\_ in Europe. Ships from all over the world stop there.
- 5 The Empire State \_\_\_\_\_ in New York was the tallest \_\_\_\_\_ in the world for over 40 years.
- 6 A church is much smaller than a \_\_\_\_\_.

- 3 Write these words from exercise 1.

/wud/ \_\_\_\_\_ /'θɪətə/ \_\_\_\_\_ /fa:m/ \_\_\_\_\_ /'vɪlɪdʒ/ \_\_\_\_\_  
/'fæktəri/ \_\_\_\_\_ /'kɒtɪdʒ/ \_\_\_\_\_ /fi:ld/ \_\_\_\_\_ /tʃɜ:tʃ/ \_\_\_\_\_

**T 10.7** Listen and repeat.

- 4 Do you prefer the town or the country? Divide into two groups. Play the game. Which group can continue the longest?



**Group 1 A walk in the country**

Continue one after the other.

- S1 I went for a walk in the country and I saw a farm.  
S2 I went for a walk in the country and I saw a farm and some cows.  
S3 I went for ...



**Group 2 A walk in the town**

Continue one after the other.

- S1 I went for a walk in the town and I saw some shops.  
S2 I went for a walk in the town and I saw some shops, and a cathedral.  
S3 I went for ...

# EVERYDAY ENGLISH

## Directions 2

- 1 T 10.8 Listen to the directions to the lake. Mark the route on the map. Then fill in the gaps.

'Drive \_\_\_\_\_ Park Road and turn \_\_\_\_\_. Go \_\_\_\_\_ the bridge and \_\_\_\_\_ the pub. Turn \_\_\_\_\_ up the hill, then drive \_\_\_\_\_ the hill to the river. \_\_\_\_\_ after the farm and the lake is \_\_\_\_\_ right. It takes twenty minutes.'



- 2 T 10.9 Complete the text with the prepositions. Listen to Norman talking about his drive in the country. Check your answers.

along down into out of over past through under up

## NORMAN'S DRIVE IN THE COUNTRY



Norman drove  
\_\_\_\_\_ the garage,  
\_\_\_\_\_ the road, and  
\_\_\_\_\_ the bridge.



Then he drove  
\_\_\_\_\_ the pub,  
\_\_\_\_\_ the hill, and  
\_\_\_\_\_ the hill.



Next he drove  
\_\_\_\_\_ the river,  
\_\_\_\_\_ the hedge,  
and \_\_\_\_\_ the lake!

- 3 Cover the text. Look at the pictures and tell Norman's story.

- 4 Work with a partner. **Student A** Think of a place near your school. Give your partner directions, but don't say what the place is!

**Student B** Listen to the directions. Where are you?

# 11

# Looking good!

Present Continuous • Whose? • Clothes • Words that rhyme • In a clothes shop

## STARTER

- 1 Look around the classroom. Can you see any of these clothes?

a hat a coat a jumper a shirt a T-shirt a dress a skirt a jacket  
a suit trousers jeans shorts shoes trainers boots

- 2 What are you wearing?

What is your teacher wearing?  
Tell the class.

*I'm wearing blue jeans  
and a white T-shirt.*

*You're wearing a dress.*

## DESCRIBING PEOPLE

### Present Continuous

- 1 Look at the photographs. Describe the people.

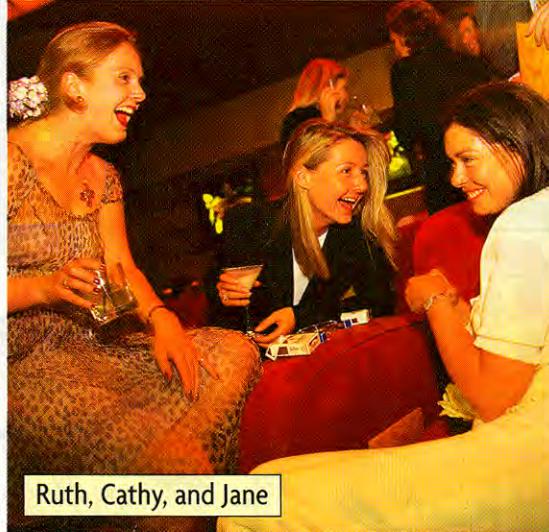
Who ... ?

- is tall • isn't very tall • is pretty • good-looking • handsome

Who's got ... ?

long	hair	blue eyes
short		
fair		
dark		
grey		

*Becca's got dark hair and brown eyes.*



Ruth, Cathy, and Jane

- 2 What are they doing?

Who ... ?

- |               |                   |
|---------------|-------------------|
| • is smiling  | • is cooking      |
| • is talking  | • is standing up  |
| • is writing  | • is playing      |
| • is laughing | • is running      |
| • is eating   | • is sitting down |

*Jane's smiling.*

*Angela's running.*



Nadia

- 3 What are they wearing?

*Rudi's wearing a brown T-shirt.*



Rudi



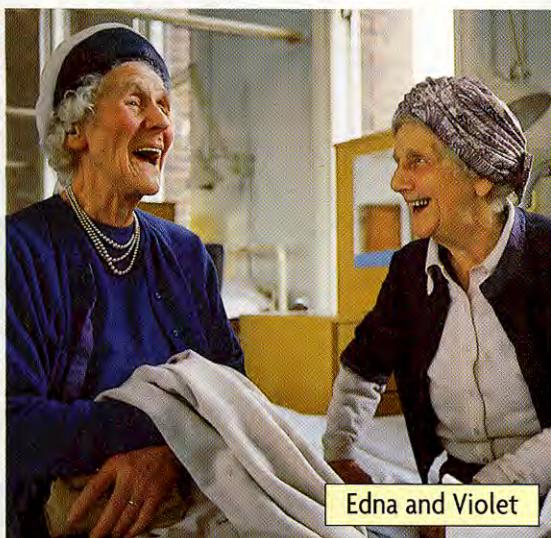
Flora and Toni



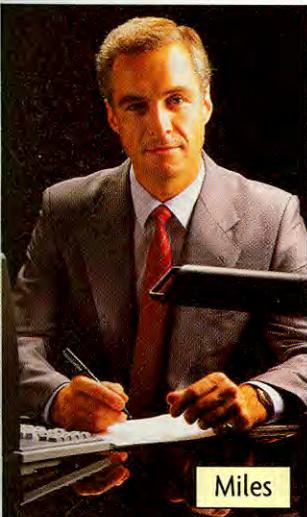
Angela



Juan



Edna and Violet



Miles



Becca

## GRAMMAR SPOT

- 1 *Am/is/are + adjective* describes people and things.  
*She is young/tall/pretty.*
- 2 *Am/is/are + verb + -ing* describes activities happening *now*.  
Complete the table.

I	<hr/>	learning English. sitting in a classroom. listening to the teacher.
You	<hr/>	
He/She	<hr/>	
We	<hr/>	
They	<hr/>	

This is the Present Continuous tense. What are the questions and the negatives?

- 3 What is the difference between these sentences?  
He speaks Spanish.  
He's speaking Spanish.

►► Grammar Reference 11.1 and 11.2 p132

## PRACTICE

### Who is it?

- 1 Work with a partner.

**Student A** Choose someone in the classroom, but don't say who.

**Student B** Ask Yes/No questions to find out who it is!

*Is it a girl?*

*Yes, it is.*

*Is she sitting near the window?*

*No, she isn't.*

*Has she got fair hair?*

*No, she hasn't.*

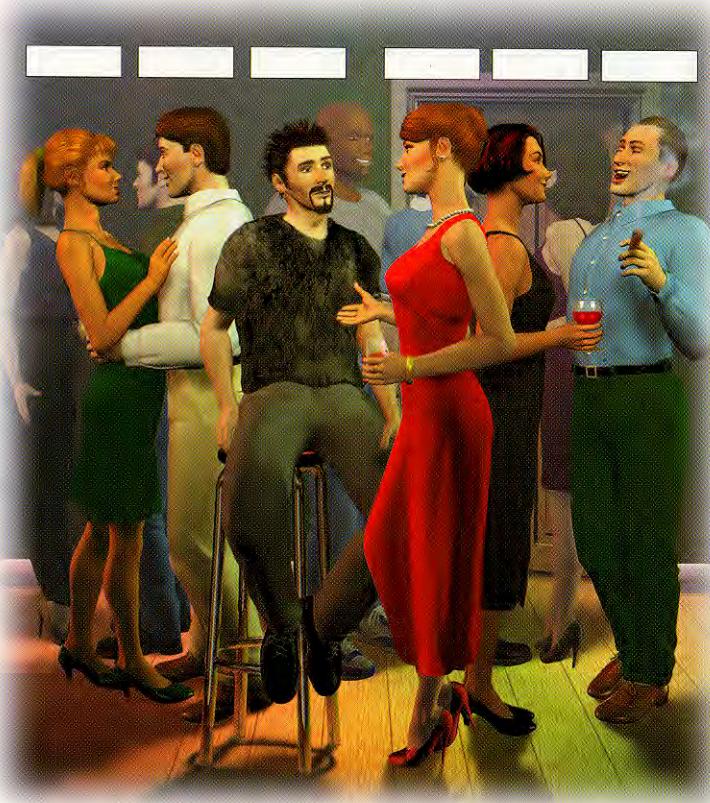
- 2 Write sentences that are true for you at the moment.

- 1 I/*wearing* a jacket  
*I'm not wearing a jacket, I'm wearing a jumper.*
- 2 I/*wearing* jeans
- 3 I/*standing up*
- 4 I/*looking out of* the window
- 5 It/*raining*
- 6 teacher/*writing*
- 7 We/*working hard*
- 8 I/*chewing gum*

Tell a partner about yourself.

## Who's at the party?

- 3 **T 11.1** Oliver is at Monica's party, but he doesn't know anyone. Monica is telling him about the other guests. Listen and write the names above the people.



- 4 Listen again and complete the table.

	Present Continuous	Present Simple
Harry	He's sitting down and he's talking to Mandy.	
Mandy		
Fiona		
George		
Roz and Sam		

- 5 Work with a partner. Look at the pictures of a party from your teacher. Don't show your picture! There are *ten* differences. Talk about the pictures to find them.

In my picture three people are dancing.

In my picture four people are dancing.

There's a girl with fair hair.

Is she wearing a black dress?

## A DAY IN THE PARK

### Whose is it?

- 1 Find these things in the picture.

a baseball cap   a bike   a football   roller blades  
trainers   a dog   sunglasses   a radio   a skateboard  
an umbrella   flowers



- 2 **T 11.2** Listen to the questions. Complete the answers with *his*, *hers*, or *theirs*.

- 1 Whose is the baseball cap? It's \_\_\_\_.
- 2 Whose are the roller blades? They're \_\_\_\_.
- 3 Whose is the dog? It's \_\_\_\_.

Practise the questions and answers with a partner. Then ask about the other things in exercise 1.

- 3 Give something of yours to the teacher. Ask and answer questions about the objects. Use these possessive pronouns.

mine   yours   his   hers   ours   theirs

Whose jacket is this?

It's Ela's.

It's hers.

Is it yours, Ela?

Yes, it's mine.



## PRACTICE

### **who's or whose?**

- 1 Choose the correct word. Compare your answers with a partner.

- 1 I like *your / yours* house.
- 2 *Ours / Our* house is smaller than *their / theirs*.
- 3 And *their / theirs* garden is bigger than *our / ours*, too.
- 4 *My / Mine* children are older than *her / hers*.
- 5 *Whose / Who's* talking to *your / yours* sister?
- 6 This book isn't *my / mine*. Is it *your / yours*?
- 7 'Whose / Who's dictionary is this?' 'It's *his / him*'.
- 8 'Whose / Who's going to the party tonight?' 'I'm not.'
- 9 'Whose / Who's dog is running round *our / ours* garden?'

- 2 **T 11.3** Listen to the sentences.

If the word is *Whose*? shout 1! If the word is *Who's*? shout 2!

### **What a mess!**

- 3 **T 11.4** The house is in a mess!

Complete the conversation.  
Listen and check.



- A \_\_\_\_\_ is this tennis racket?  
B It's \_\_\_\_\_.  
A What's it doing here?  
B I'm \_\_\_\_\_ tennis this afternoon.



The Present Continuous can also describe activities happening in the near future.

I'm **playing** tennis this afternoon.  
We're **having** pizza for dinner tonight.

- 4 Make more conversations with a partner.

- 1 these football boots? / John's / playing football later
- 2 these ballet shoes? / Mary's / going dancing tonight
- 3 this suitcase? / mine / going on holiday tomorrow
- 4 this coat? / Jane's / going for a walk soon
- 5 this plane ticket? / Jo's / flying to Rome this afternoon
- 6 all these glasses? / ours / having a party tonight

### **Check it**

- 5 Correct the sentences.

- 1 Alice is tall and she's got long, black hairs.
- 2 Who's boots are these?
- 3 I'm wearing a jeans.
- 4 Look at Roger. He stands next to Jeremy.
- 5 He's work in a bank. He's the manager.
- 6 What is drinking Suzie?
- 7 Whose that man in the garden?
- 8 Where you going tonight?
- 9 What you do after school today?

### **GRAMMAR SPOT**

- 1 Complete the table.

Subject	Object	Adjective	Pronoun
I	me	my	mine
You	you	_____	_____
He	_____	his	_____
She	_____	_____	hers
We	us	our	_____
They	them	_____	_____

- 2 *Whose* ...? asks about possession.

Whose hat is this?  
Whose is this hat? It's mine. = It's my hat.  
Whose is it?

- 3 Careful!

Who's your teacher? Who's = Who is

► Grammar Reference 11.3 p132

# LISTENING AND SPEAKING

## What a wonderful world!

- 1 Look out of the window. What can you see? Buildings? Hills? Fields? Can you see any people? What are they doing? Describe the scene.
- 2 These words often go together. Match them. Can you see any of them in the photos?

shake	clouds
babies	roses
sunny	hands
starry	trees
blue	day
red	night
white	cry
green	bloom
flowers	of the rainbow
colours	skies



- 3 Read the song by Louis Armstrong. Can you complete any of the lines? Many of the words are from exercise 2.

- 4 **T 11.5** Listen and complete the song.

### What do you think?

Make a list of things that you think are wonderful in the world. Compare your list with a partner.



# what a Wonderful World

I see \_\_\_\_ of green  
red \_\_\_\_ too

I see them \_\_\_\_ for me and you  
and I think to myself  
what a wonderful world.

I see \_\_\_\_ of blue  
and \_\_\_\_ of white  
the bright \_\_\_\_ day  
and the dark \_\_\_\_ night  
and I think to myself  
what a wonderful world.

The \_\_\_\_ of the rainbow  
so pretty in the sky  
are also on the \_\_\_\_  
of the people going by.

I see friends shaking \_\_\_\_  
saying, 'How do you do?'  
They're really saying  
'I \_\_\_\_ you.'

I hear \_\_\_\_ cry  
I watch them grow.

They'll \_\_\_\_ much more  
than you'll ever know  
and I think to myself  
what a wonderful world.

Yes, I think to myself  
what a wonderful world.

# VOCABULARY AND PRONUNCIATION

## Words that rhyme

- 1 Match the words that rhyme.

<b>red</b>	<b>list</b>
<b>hat</b>	<b>mean</b>
<b>kissed</b>	<b>shoes</b>
<b>green</b>	<b>said</b>
<b>laugh</b>	<b>that</b>
<b>whose</b>	<b>bought</b>
<b>short</b>	<b>half</b>

<b>white</b>	<b>beer</b>
<b>near</b>	<b>wear</b>
<b>they</b>	<b>night</b>
<b>hair</b>	<b>knows</b>
<b>rose</b>	<b>flowers</b>
<b>ours</b>	<b>pay</b>

- 2 Write two of the words on each line according to the sound.

### Vowels

- |                  |              |              |
|------------------|--------------|--------------|
| 1 /e/ <u>red</u> | <u>said</u>  | 5 /a:/ _____ |
| 2 /æ/ _____      | 6 /u:/ _____ | 4 /eə/ _____ |
| 3 /ɪ/ _____      | 7 /ɔ:/ _____ | 5 /əʊ/ _____ |
| 4 /i:/ _____     | _____        | 6 /aʊ/ _____ |

### Diphthongs

- |                     |              |
|---------------------|--------------|
| 1 /aɪ/ <u>white</u> | 4 /eə/ _____ |
| 2 /ɪə/ _____        | 5 /əʊ/ _____ |
| 3 /eɪ/ _____        | 6 /aʊ/ _____ |

### T 11.6 Listen and check.

- 3 Can you add any more words to the lists? Practise saying the words in rhyming pairs.

## Tongue twisters

- 4 **T 11.7** Tongue twisters are sentences that are difficult to say. They are good pronunciation practice. Listen, then try saying these quickly to a partner.



- 5 Choose two tongue twisters and learn them. Say them to the class.

# EVERYDAY ENGLISH

## In a clothes shop

- 1 Read the lines of conversation in a clothes shop. Who says them, the customer or the shop assistant?

Write C or SA.

- a  Can I help you? **SA**
- b  Oh yes. I like that one much better. Can I try it on? **C**
- c  £39.99. How do you want to pay?
- d  Yes, please. I'm looking for a shirt to go with my new suit.
- e  Blue.
- f  Yes, of course. The changing rooms are over there.
- g  OK. I'll take the white. How much is it?
- h  Can I pay by credit card?
- i  What colour are you looking for?
- j  No, it isn't the right blue.
- k  No, it's a bit too big. Have you got a smaller size?
- l  That's the last blue one we've got, I'm afraid. But we've got it in white.
- m  Well, what about this one? It's a bit darker blue.
- n  What about this one? Do you like this?
- o  Is the size OK?
- p  Credit card's fine. Thank you very much.

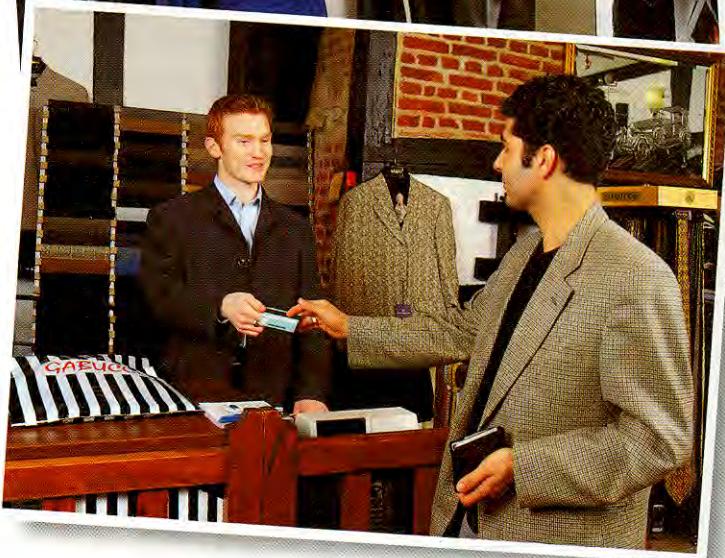
- 2 Can you match any lines?

*Can I help you?*

*Yes, please. I'm looking for a shirt to go with my new suit.*

*What about this one?  
Do you like this?*

*No, it's not the right blue.*



- 3 Work with a partner and put the all the lines in the correct order.

**T 11.8** Listen and check.

- 4 Practise the conversation with your partner. Make more conversations in a clothes shop. Buy some different clothes.

# 12 Life's an adventure!

*going to future • Infinitive of purpose • The weather • Making suggestions*

## STARTER

- 1 How many sentences can you make?

I'm going to Florida  
I went to Florida

soon.  
when I was a student.  
next month.  
in a year's time.  
two years ago.  
when I retire.

- 2 Make similar true sentences about you. Tell the class.

## FUTURE PLANS

*going to*

- 1 Rosie and her teacher Miss Bishop both have plans for the future.

Read their future plans. Which do you think are Rosie's? Which are Miss Bishop's? Write R or MB.

- 1  I'm going to be a ballet dancer.
- 2  I'm going to travel all over the world.
- 3  I'm going to learn Russian.
- 4  I'm going to learn to drive.
- 5  I'm going to open a school.
- 6  I'm not going to marry until I'm thirty-five.
- 7  I'm not going to wear skirts and blouses.
- 8  I'm going to wear jeans and T-shirts all the time.
- 9  I'm going to write a book.
- 10  I'm going to become a TV star.

**T 12.1** Listen and check. Were you correct?

- 2 Talk first about Rosie, then about Miss Bishop. Use the ideas in exercise 1.

*Rosie's going to be a ballet dancer.*

*She's going to ...*

*She isn't going to ...*

Which two plans are the same for both of them?

*They're both going to ...*

**When I grow up ...**



## PRACTICE

- 3 **T 12.2** Listen and repeat the questions and answers about Rosie.

*Is she going to be a ballet dancer?*

*Yes, she is.*

*What's she going to do?*

*Travel all over the world.*

### GRAMMAR SPOT

- 1 The verb *to be + going to* expresses future plans.  
Complete the table.

I	_____	going to leave tomorrow.
You	_____	
He/She	_____	
We	_____	
They	_____	

What are the questions and the negatives?

- 2 Is there much difference between these two sentences?  
*I'm leaving tomorrow.*   *I'm going to leave tomorrow.*

►► Grammar Reference 12.1 p133

**When I retire ...**



Miss Bishop, aged 59

### Questions about Rosie

- 1 With a partner, make more questions about Rosie. Then match them with an answer.

#### Questions

- 1 Why/she/learn French and Russian?
- 2 When/marry?
- 3 How many children/have?
- 4 How long/work?
- 5 What/teach?

#### Answers

- a Until she's seventy-five.
- b Two.
- c Dancing.
- d Not until she's thirty-five.
- e Because she wants to dance in Paris and Moscow.

- 2 **T 12.3** Listen and check. Practise the questions and answers with your partner.

### Questions about you

- 3 Are you going to do any of these things after the lesson? Ask and answer the questions with a partner.

- 1 watch TV

*Are you going to watch TV?*

*Yes, I am./No, I'm not.*

- 2 have a coffee
- 3 catch a bus
- 4 eat in a restaurant
- 5 meet some friends
- 6 cook a meal
- 7 go shopping
- 8 wash your hair
- 9 do your homework

- 4 Tell the class some of the things you and your partner *are* or *are not* going to do.

*We're both going to have coffee.*

*I'm going to catch a bus, but Anna isn't. She's going to walk home.*

# I WANT TO TRAVEL THE WORLD

## Infinitive of purpose

- 1** Match a country or a city with an activity. What can you see in the photographs?

<b>Holland</b>	visit the pyramids
<b>Spain</b>	fly over the Grand Canyon
<b>Moscow</b>	see Mount Fuji
<b>Egypt</b>	see the tulips
<b>Kenya</b>	walk along the Great Wall
<b>India</b>	watch flamenco dancing
<b>China</b>	take photographs of the lions
<b>Japan</b>	sunbathe on Copacabana beach
<b>the USA</b>	walk in Red Square
<b>Rio</b>	visit the Taj Mahal

- 2** Miss Bishop is going to visit all these countries. She is telling her friend, Harold, about her plans. Read their conversation and complete the last sentence.

**Miss Bishop** First I'm going to Holland.

**Harold** Why?

**Miss Bishop** To see the tulips, of course!

**Harold** Oh yes! How wonderful! Where are you going after that?

**Miss Bishop** Well, then I'm going to Spain to ...

- T 12.5** Listen and check. Practise the conversation with a partner.

### GRAMMAR SPOT

- 1** With the verbs *to go* and *to come*, we usually use the Present Continuous for future plans.

I'm going to Holland tomorrow.

X I'm going to go to Holland tomorrow.

She's coming this evening.

X She's going to come this evening.

- 2** Do these sentences mean the same?

I'm going to Holland to see the tulips.

I'm going to Holland because I want to see the tulips.

The infinitive can tell us why something happens.

I'm going to America to learn English.

► Grammar Reference 12.2 p133

## I'm going to sneeze!



We also use *going to* when we can see *now* that something is sure to happen in the future.

- 5** What is going to happen? Use these verbs.

have sneeze win jump be late kiss rain fall



- 6** Put a sentence from exercise 5 into each gap.

- Take an umbrella. \_\_\_\_\_ .
- Look at the time! \_\_\_\_\_ for the meeting.
- Anna's running very fast. \_\_\_\_\_ .
- Look! Jack's on the wall! \_\_\_\_\_ .
- Look at that man! \_\_\_\_\_ .
- \_\_\_\_\_ . It's due next month.
- There's my sister and her boyfriend! Yuk! \_\_\_\_\_ .
- 'Oh dear. \_\_\_\_\_ . Aaattishooo!' 'Bless you!'

**T 12.4** Listen and check.



# PRACTICE

## Roleplay

- 1 Work with a partner. **Student A** is Harold, **Student B** is Miss Bishop. Ask and answer questions about the places.

**Harold** Why are you going to Holland?

**Miss Bishop** To see the tulips, of course!

**Harold** How wonderful!

- 2 Talk about Miss Bishop's journey. Use *first, then, next, after that*.

*First she's going to Holland to see the tulips. Then she's ...*

## Why and When?

- 3 Write down the names of some places you went to in the past. Ask and answer questions about the places with a partner.

*Why did you go to England?*

*To learn English.*

*When did you go?*

*Two years ago.*

*Why did you go to Melbourne?*

*To visit my cousins.*

*When did you go?*

*Last year.*

Tell the class about your partner.

- 4 Write down the names of some places you are going to in the future and do the same.

*Why are you going to Paris?*

*To go shopping.*

*When are you going?*

*In two weeks' time.*

## Check it

- 5 Tick (✓) the correct sentence.

- 1  Is going to rain.  
 It's going to rain.
- 2  Do you wash your hair this evening?  
 Are you going to wash your hair this evening?
- 3  She's going to have a baby.  
 She's going to has a baby.
- 4  I'm going to the Post Office to buy some stamps.  
 I'm going to the Post Office for buy some stamps.
- 5  I'm going home early this evening.  
 I'm go home early this evening.
- 6  I opened the window to get some fresh air.  
 I opened the window for to get some fresh air.

# READING AND SPEAKING

## Living dangerously

- 1 Match a verb with a noun or phrase.

have	sick
win	an accident
feel	in water
float	top marks
get	a race

- 2 Which of these sports do you think is the most dangerous? Put them in order 1–6. 1 is the *most* dangerous. Compare your ideas with a partner and then the class.

skiing       football       motor racing  
 windsurfing       golf       sky-diving

- 3 Look at the photos of Clem Quinn and Sue Glass. Which of their sports would you most like to try? Why?

Work in two groups.

**Group A** Read about Clem. **Group B** Read about Sue.

Answer the questions about your person. Check your answers with your group.

- 1 What happened when he/she was a child?
- 2 What job did he/she do when she/he grew up?
- 3 How did he/she become interested in the sport?
- 4 Why does he/she like the sport?
- 5 Does he/she think it is a dangerous sport?
- 6 Does he/she teach the sport?
- 7 What are his/her future plans?
- 8 When is he/she going to stop doing it?
- 9 These numbers are in your text. What do they refer to?  
5 6 20 100

- 4 Work with a partner from the other group. Compare Clem and Sue, using your answers.

### Interviews

- 1 **Group A** You are Clem. Make questions about Sue.

- 1 Why/not like driving?
- 2 Why/Julian Swayland take you to Brands Hatch?
- 3 Why/do well on the motor racing course?
- 4 Why/stop motor racing?
- 5 What/do next year?

- Group B** You are Sue. Make questions about Clem.

- 1 What/do when you were five?
- 2 When/do your first parachute jump?
- 3 Why /move to the country?
- 4 What/do next July?

- 2 Work with a partner from the other group. Interview each other.



## Clem Quinn

### SKY-DIVER

**Clem Quinn** was always interested in flying. When he was five, he tried to fly by jumping off the garden shed with a golf umbrella, but when he grew up he didn't become a pilot, he became a taxi driver. Then 20 years ago he did a parachute jump and loved it. He decided that being a taxi driver in London was a lot more dangerous than jumping out of a plane, so he moved to the country to learn parachute jumping and sky-diving. He is now a full-time teacher of sky-diving. He says:

'I love sky-diving because the world looks so good – blue sky, green fields, white clouds. You float through the air, it's like floating in water. You can see forever, all the way to the French coast. The views are fantastic. You can forget all your worries. People think it is dangerous but it's very safe. Football is much more dangerous. Footballers often have accidents. When did you last hear of a sky-diving accident? Next July I'm going to do a sky-dive with 100 people from six planes. That's a record. I'm never going to retire. I'm going to jump out of planes until I'm an old man.'



## Sue Glass

### RACING DRIVER

**Sue Glass** had a car accident when she was eight so she didn't like driving. When she grew up this was a problem, because she got a job with a car company. Then six years ago she met Julian Swayland, a racing driver, and she told him she was afraid of cars. He wanted to help, so he took her to Brands Hatch, a Grand Prix racing circuit. He drove her round corners at 100 mph and she loved it. Then she heard about a special motor racing course. She did the course with five men and was amazed when she got top marks. She says:

'I think I did well because I listened to everything the teacher said. I needed to because I was so afraid. The men often didn't listen. The best moment was my first championship race. I didn't win but I came fourth. I beat 20 men. I love the excitement of motor racing but it's a dangerous sport and I'm always very frightened. In fact I stopped doing it a year ago, because I got so nervous before each race, I felt really sick. I'm not going to race again, I'm going to teach other people to drive. I'm going to open a driving school next year.'



# VOCABULARY AND SPEAKING

## The weather

- 1 Match the words and symbols.

sunny rainy windy snowy cloudy foggy



Which symbols can the following adjectives go with?

hot warm cold cool wet dry

- 2 **T 12.6** Listen and complete the answers.

'What's the weather like today?' 'It's \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_.'

'What was it like yesterday?' 'Oh, it was \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_.'

'What's it going to be like tomorrow?' 'I think it's going to be \_\_\_\_\_.'



The question *What...like?* asks for a description.

**What's the weather like? = Tell me about the weather.**

Practise the questions and answers. Ask and answer about the weather where *you* are today, yesterday, and tomorrow.

- 3 Work with a partner. Find out about the weather round the world yesterday.

**Student A** Look at the information on this page.

**Student B** Look at the information from your teacher.

Ask and answer questions to complete the information.

*What was the weather like in Athens?*

*It was sunny and warm. 18 degrees.*

### WORLD WEATHER: NOON YESTERDAY

		°C
Athens .....	S	18
Berlin .....	R	7
Bombay .....		
Edinburgh .....	C	5
Geneva .....		
Hong Kong .....	S	29
Lisbon .....		
London .....	R	10
Los Angeles .....		
Luxor .....	S	40
Milan .....		
Moscow .....	Sn	-1
Oslo .....		

S = sunny  
C = cloudy  
Fg = foggy  
R = rainy  
Sn = snowy

- 4 Which city was the hottest? Which was the coldest?  
Which month do you think it is?



# EVERDAY ENGLISH

## Making suggestions

- 1 Make a list of things you can do in good weather and things you can do in bad weather. Compare your list with a partner.

Good weather	Bad weather
go to the beach	watch TV

- 2 **T 12.7** Read and listen to the beginning of two conversations. Complete B's suggestions.



1 A It's a lovely day!  
What shall we do?  
B Let's \_\_\_\_\_!

2 A It's raining again!  
What shall we do?  
B Let's \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_.



1 We use *shall* to ask for and make suggestions.  
*What shall we do?*  
*Shall we go swimming? = I suggest that we go swimming.*

2 We use *Let's* to make a suggestion for everyone.  
*Let's go! = I suggest that we all go. (Let's = Let us)*  
*Let's have a pizza!*

- 3 Match these lines with the two conversations in exercise 2. Put them in the correct order to complete the conversations.

Well, let's go to the beach.  
OK. Which film do you want to see?  
Oh no! It's too hot to play tennis.

Oh no! We watched a video last night.  
OK. I'll get my swimming costume.  
Well, let's go to the cinema.

**T 12.8** Listen and check. Practise the conversations with your partner.

- 4 Have more conversations suggesting what to do when the weather is good or bad. Use your lists of activities in exercise 1 to help you.

# 13

# How terribly clever!

Question forms • Adverbs and adjectives • Describing feelings • Catching a train

## STARTER

- Match a question word with an answer.
- Look at the answers. What do you think the story is?

When ... ?	Six.
Where ... ?	1991.
What ... ?	Paris.
Who ... ?	Because I love him.
Why ... ?	John.
Which ... ?	Some roses.
How ... ?	£25.
How much ... ?	The red ones.
How many ... ?	By plane.



## A QUIZ

### Question words

- Work in groups and answer the quiz.
- T 13.1** Listen and check your answers. Listen carefully to the intonation of the questions.

### GRAMMAR SPOT

- Underline all the question words in the quiz.
- Make two questions for each of these statements, one with a question word and one without.  
I live in London. (where)  
'Where do you live?' 'In London.'  
'Do you live in London?' 'Yes, I do.'
- She's wearing jeans. (what)  
She works in the bank. (where)  
He's leaving tomorrow. (when)  
I visited my aunt. (who)  
We came by taxi. (how)  
They're going to have a party. (why)
- What are the short answers to the questions?

► Grammar Reference 13.1 p133

- In groups, write some general knowledge questions. Ask the class!

## GENERAL KNOWLEDGE



1 When did the first man walk on the moon?

- a 1961   b 1965   c 1969

2 Where are the Andes mountains?

3 Who did Mother Teresa look after?

4 Who won the last World Cup?

5 How many American states are there?

6 How much does an African elephant weigh?

- a 3–5 tonnes   b 5–7 tonnes   c 7–9 tonnes

7 How far is it from London to New York?

- a 6,000 kilometres

- b 9,000 kilometres

- c 12,000 kilometres

## PRACTICE

### Questions and answers

- 1 Look at the question words in A and the answers in C. Choose the correct question from B.

A	B	C
Where		To the shops.
What		A new jacket.
When	did you buy?	This morning.
Who	did you go?	A friend from work.
Why	did you go with?	To buy some new clothes.
Which one	did you pay?	The black, leather one.
How		We drove.
How much		£120.99.
How many		Only one.



## KNOWLEDGE QUIZ

- 8 How old was Princess Diana when she died?  
a 33 b 36 c 39
- 9 What languages do Swiss people speak?
- 10 What did Marconi invent in 1901?
- 11 What sort of music did Louis Armstrong play?  
a Jazz b Blues c Rock 'n' roll
- 12 What happens at the end of *Romeo and Juliet*?
- 13 What happened in Europe in 1939?
- 14 Why do birds migrate?
- 15 Which was the first country to have TV?  
a Britain b the USA c Russia
- 16 Which language has the most words?  
a French b Chinese c English

### Listening and pronunciation

- 2 T 13.2 Tick (✓) the sentence you hear.

- 1  Where do you want to go?  
 Why do you want to go?
- 2  How is she?  
 Who is she?
- 3  Where's he staying?  
 Where's she staying?
- 4  Why did they come?  
 Why didn't they come?
- 5  How old was she?  
 How old is she?
- 6  Does he play the guitar?  
 Did he play the guitar?
- 7  Where did you go at the weekend?  
 Where do you go at the weekend?

### Asking about you

- 3 Put the words in the correct order to make questions.

1 like learning do English you?

---

2 do you night what did last?

---

3 languages mother many does how your speak?

---

4 last go you shopping did when?

---

5 football which you do team support?

---

6 come car today school by you to did?

---

7 much do weigh you how?

---

8 usually who sit you do next class in to?

---

9 English want learn to you do why?

---

- 4 Work with a partner. Ask and answer the questions.

# DO IT CAREFULLY!

## Adverbs and adjectives

- 1 Are the words in *italics* adjectives or adverbs?

- 1 Smoking is a *bad* habit.  
The team played *badly* and lost the match.
- 2 Please listen *carefully*.  
Jane's a *careful* driver.
- 3 The homework was *easy*.  
Peter's very good at tennis. He won the game *easily*.
- 4 I know the Prime Minister *well*.  
My husband's a *good* cook.
- 5 It's a *hard* life.  
Teachers work *hard* and don't earn much money.

### GRAMMAR SPOT

- 1 Look at these sentences.

Lunch is a quick meal for many people.  
(*quick* = adjective. It describes a noun.)  
I ate my lunch quickly.  
(*quickly* = adverb. It describes a verb.)

- 2 How do we make regular adverbs? What happens when the adjective ends in -y?  
3 There are two irregular adverbs in exercise 1. Find them.

► Grammar Reference 13.2 p133

- 2 Match the verbs or phrases with an adverb. Usually more than one answer is possible. Which are the irregular adverbs?

get up	slowly
walk	quietly
work	early
run	fluently
speak	carefully
speak English	easily
pass the exam	hard
do your homework	fast/quickly

# PRACTICE

## Order of adjectives/adverbs

- 1 Put the adjective in brackets in the correct place in the sentence. Where necessary, change the adjective to an adverb.

- 1 We had a holiday in Spain, but unfortunately we had weather. (terrible)
- 2 Maria dances. (good)
- 3 When I saw the accident, I phoned the police. (immediate)
- 4 Don't worry. Justin is a driver. (careful)
- 5 Jean-Pierre is a Frenchman. He loves food, wine, and rugby. (typical)
- 6 Please speak. I can't understand you. (slow)
- 7 We had a test today. (easy)
- 8 We all passed. (easy)
- 9 You speak English. (good)

## Telling a story

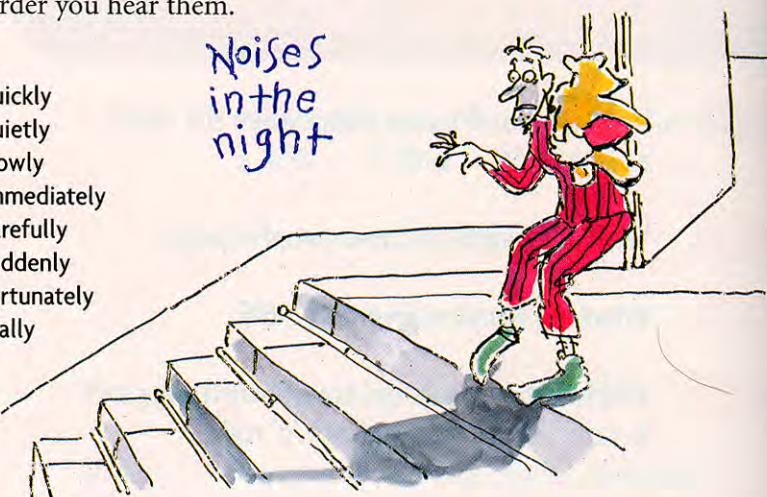
- 2 Complete these sentences in a suitable way.

- 1 It started to rain. **Fortunately** ...
- 2 Peter invited me to his party. **Unfortunately** ...
- 3 I was fast asleep when **suddenly** ...
- 4 I saw a man with a gun outside the bank. **Immediately** ...

- 3 **T 13.3** Look at the picture and listen to a man describing what happened to him in the middle of the night. Number the adverbs in the order you hear them.

- quickly
- quietly
- slowly
- immediately
- carefully
- suddenly
- fortunately
- really

Noises  
in the  
night



- 4 Work with a partner and tell the story again. Use the order of the adverbs to help you.

## Check it

- 5 Each sentence has a mistake. Find it and correct it.

- 1 Where does live Anna's sister?
- 2 The children came into the classroom noisyly.
- 3 What means whistle?
- 4 I always work hardly.
- 5 Do you can help me, please?
- 6 When is going Peter on holiday?

# VOCABULARY

## Describing feelings

1 Match the feelings to the pictures.

bored tired worried excited annoyed interested



2



3



4



6

2 Match the feelings and reasons to make sentences.

Feelings		Reasons
I am bored tired worried excited annoyed interested	because	I'm going on holiday tomorrow. we have a good teacher. I worked very hard today. I can't find my keys. I have nothing to do. I want to go to the party but I can't.



Some adjectives can end in both **-ed** and **-ing**.

The book was interesting.  
I was interested in the book.  
The lesson was boring.  
The students were bored.

3 Complete each sentence with the correct adjective.

1 **excited, exciting**

Life in New York is very ...

The football fans were very ...

2 **tired, tiring**

The marathon runners were very ...

That game of tennis was very ...

3 **annoyed, annoying**

The child's behaviour was really ...

The teacher was ... when nobody did the homework.

4 **worried, worrying**

The news is very ...

Everybody was very ... when they heard the news.

4 Answer your teacher's questions using adjectives from exercises 1 and 2.

Did you like doing exercise 2?

No, we didn't. It was very boring!

How did you feel?

Very bored!

# READING AND LISTENING

## A story in a story

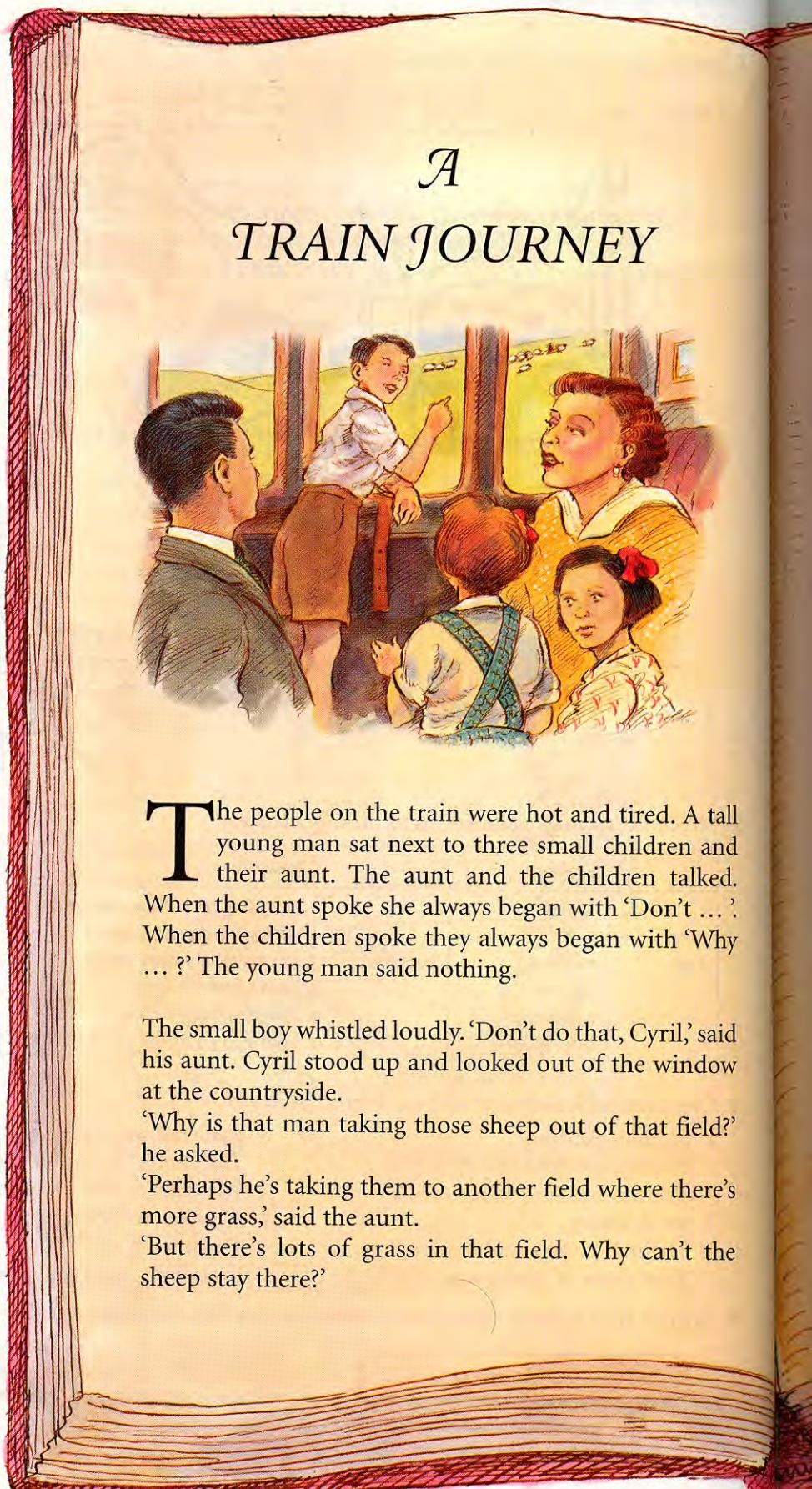
- 1 Think about when you were a small child. Did your parents tell you stories? Which was your favourite story? Tell the class.
- 2 Look at the first picture. Who do you think the people on the train are? Do they know each other?
- 3 **T 13.4** Read and listen to part one of the story.
- 4 Answer the questions.
  - 1 Who are the people on the train?
  - 2 What does Cyril ask questions about?
  - 3 Why does the aunt tell the children a story?
  - 4 What is the story about?
  - 5 Do the children like the story?
  - 6 Why does the young man start speaking?
  - 7 Which of these adjectives best describe the people? Write them in the correct column.

quiet noisy badly-behaved tired  
worried bored boring annoyed  
annoying

### The aunt

### The children

### The young man



'Perhaps the grass in the other field is better.'

'Why is it better?'

The young man looked annoyed.

'Oh dear,' thought the aunt, 'he doesn't like children.'

'Sit down quietly, Cyril. Now, listen, I'm going to tell you all a story.'

The children looked bored but they listened. The story was very boring indeed. It was about a very beautiful little girl, who worked hard and behaved beautifully. Everybody loved her. One day she fell into a lake and everyone in the village ran to save her.



'Why did they save her?' asked the bigger girl.

'Because she was so good,' said the aunt.

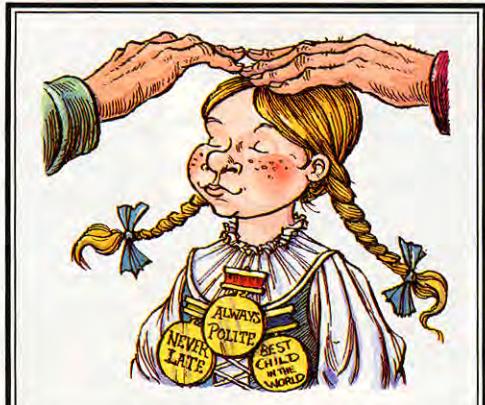
'But that's stupid,' said the girl. 'When people fall into lakes, it doesn't matter if they're good or bad, you run to save them.'

'You're right,' said the young man, speaking for the first time. 'That's a ridiculous story.'

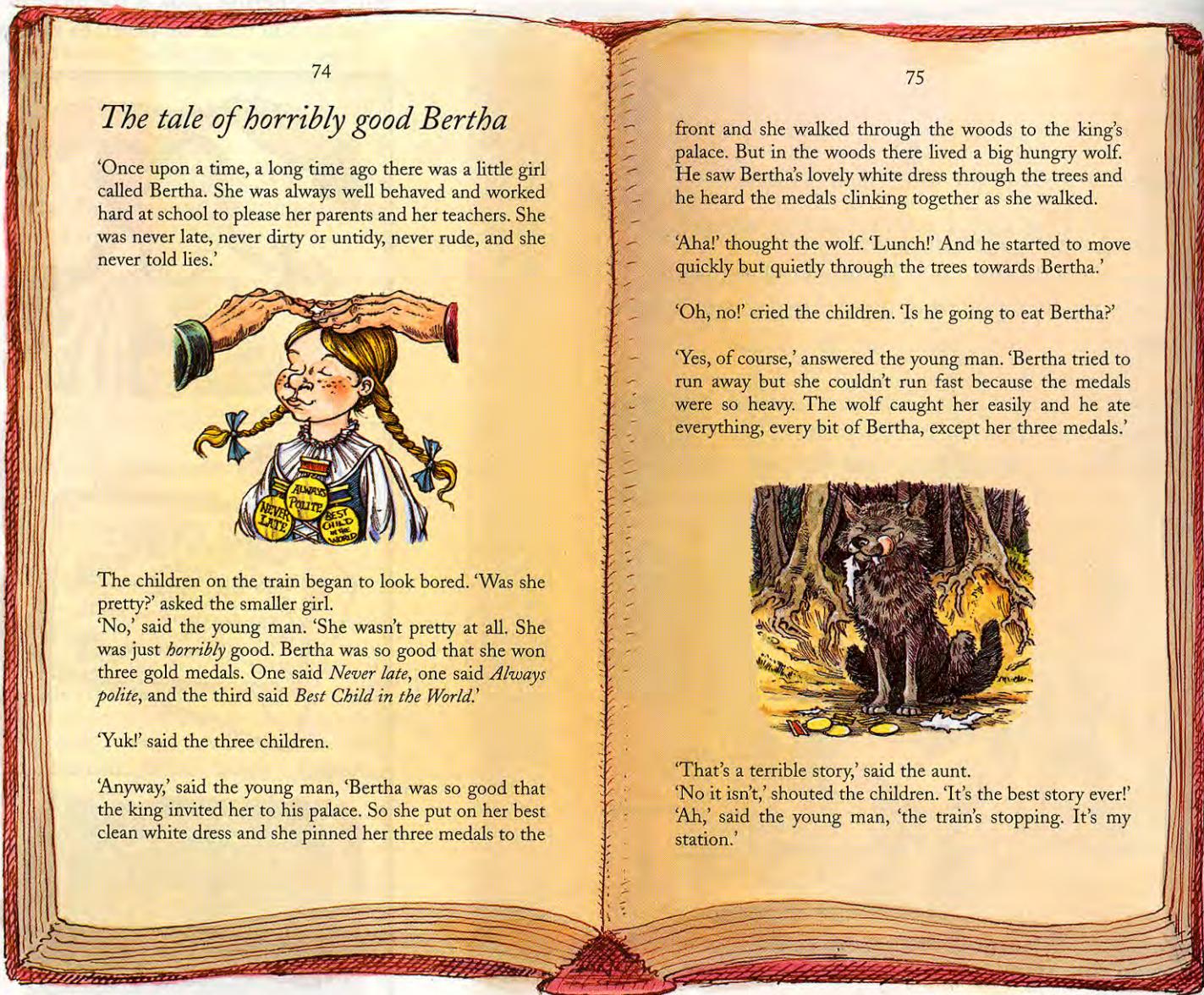
'Well, perhaps *you* would like to tell a story,' said the aunt coldly.

'OK,' said the man. The children looked interested and he began.

- 5 The young man tells the story of a little girl called Bertha. Look at the pictures. What do you think happened to Bertha?



**6 T 13.5** Read and listen to part two.



**7** Answer the questions.

- What is the same and what is different in the aunt's story and the young man's story?
- Does the aunt like the young man's story? Why/Why not?
- Do the children like the story? Why/Why not?
- Which of these do you think is the moral of Bertha's story?

It pays to be good.

It never pays to be good.

It doesn't always pay to be good.

- 8** Tell the story of Bertha. Use the pictures in exercise 5 on p103 to help you.

**Language work**

- 1** Put some adjectives and adverbs from the story of Bertha into the correct box.

Adjectives	Adverbs

- 2** Write questions about Bertha's story using these question words. Ask and answer the questions across the class.

when how many what why where how

When did the story take place?

A long time ago.

# EVERYDAY ENGLISH

## Catching a train

1 Ann is phoning to find out the times of trains to Bristol.

**T 13.6** Listen and write in the arrival times.

! Notice we often use the twenty-four hour clock for timetables.  
7.00 in the morning = 0700 (oh seven hundred hours)

2 **T 13.7** Ann is at Oxford Station. Listen and complete the conversation. Then practise with a partner.

A Good morning. (1) \_\_\_\_\_ the times of trains  
(2) \_\_\_\_\_ Bristol (3) \_\_\_\_\_ Oxford,  
please?

B Afternoon, evening? When (4) \_\_\_\_\_ ?

A About five o'clock this afternoon.

B About (5) \_\_\_\_\_. Right. Let's have a look.  
There's a train that (6) \_\_\_\_\_ 5.28, then there  
isn't (7) \_\_\_\_\_ until 6.50.

A And (8) \_\_\_\_\_ get in?

B The 5.28 gets into Oxford at 6.54 and the 6.50  
(9) \_\_\_\_\_ .

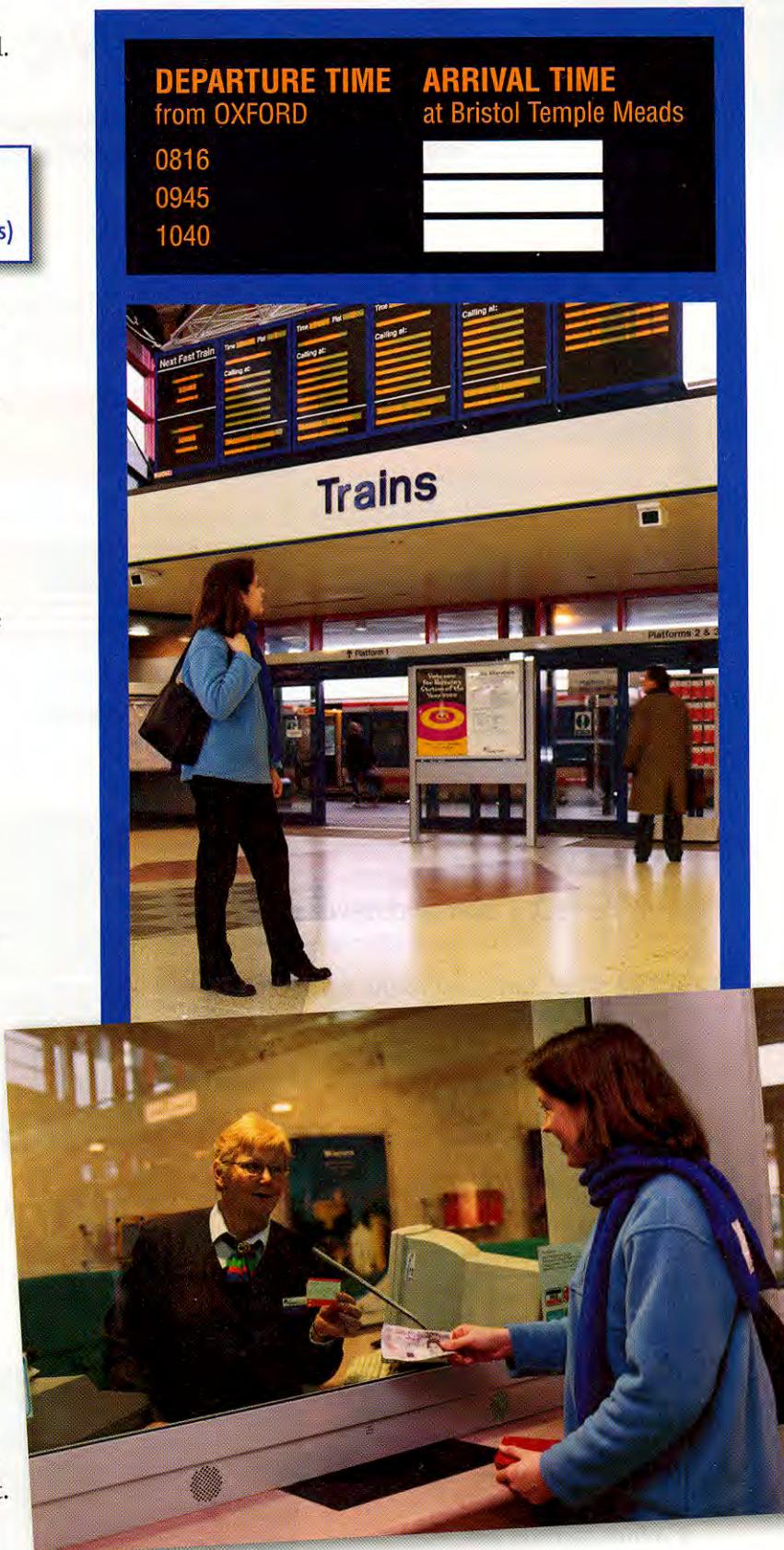
A Thanks a lot.

3 Ann goes to the ticket office. Put the lines of the conversation in the correct order.

- A Hello. A return to Bristol, please.
- A A day return.
- C How do you want to pay?
- I A OK, thanks very much. Goodbye.
- C Here's your change and your ticket.
- C You want platform 1 over there.
- A Here's a twenty-pound note.
- C Day return or period return?
- A Cash, please.
- C That's eighteen pounds.
- A Thank you. Which platform is it?

**T 13.8** Listen and check. Practise the conversation with a partner.

4 Make more conversations with your partner. Look at the information from your teacher. Decide where you want to go. Find out about times, then buy your ticket.



# 14

# Have you ever?

Present Perfect + ever, never, yet, and just • At the airport

## STARTER

- 1 Match the countries and flags.

Australia	Brazil	France	Germany	Great Britain		
Greece	Hungary	Italy	Japan	Canada	Spain	the USA



1 \_\_\_\_\_



2 \_\_\_\_\_



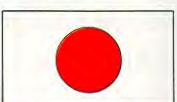
3 \_\_\_\_\_



4 \_\_\_\_\_



5 \_\_\_\_\_



6 \_\_\_\_\_



7 \_\_\_\_\_



8 \_\_\_\_\_



9 \_\_\_\_\_



10 \_\_\_\_\_



11 \_\_\_\_\_



12 \_\_\_\_\_

- 2 Tick (✓) the countries that you have visited.

## IN MY LIFE

Present Perfect + ever and never

- 1 **T 14.1** Read and listen to the sentences.

Then listen and repeat.

I've been to Germany. (I've = I have)

I haven't been to France.

I've been to the USA.

I've never been to Australia.

I haven't been to any of the countries!

Work in groups. Tell each other which of the countries above you have or haven't been to. Have you been to any other countries?

- 2 **T 14.2** Read and listen to the conversation.

Practise with a partner.

A Have you ever been to Paris?

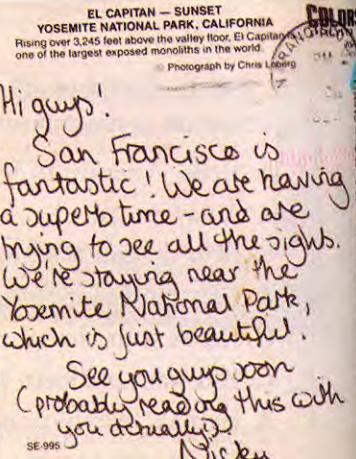
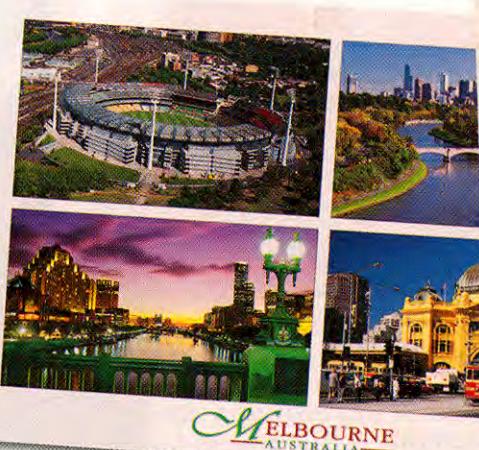
B No, I haven't.

A Have you ever been to Berlin?

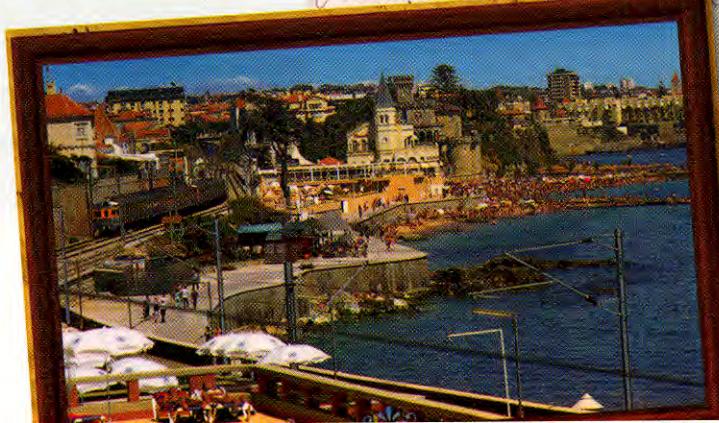
B Yes, I have.

A When did you go?

B Two years ago.

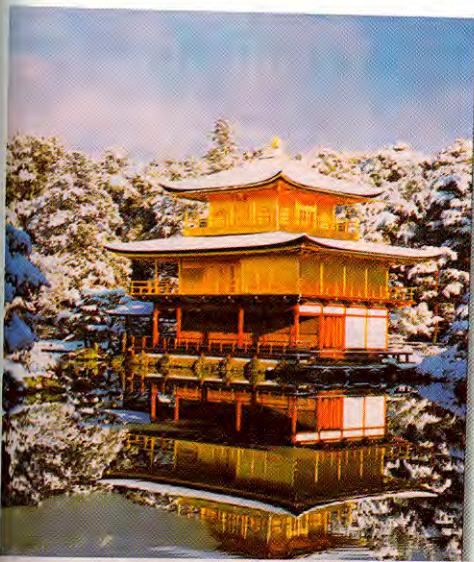


SE-995



Le Moulin Rouge  
114  
OK  
CF

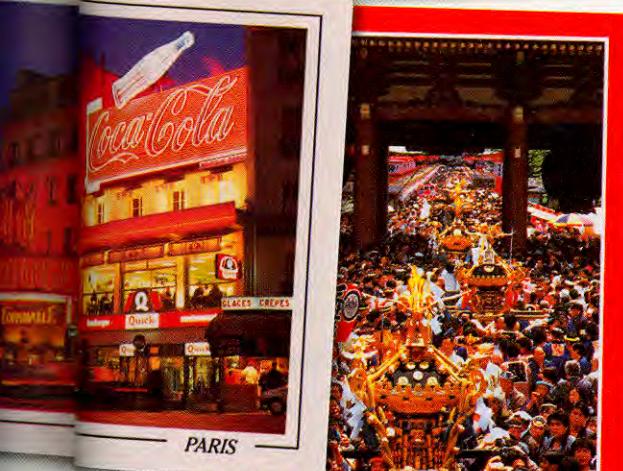




BUDAPEST



Cidade Antiga  
LISBOA



PARIS

- 3 Write down the names of four cities in your country or another country that you have been to. Have similar conversations with your partner.
- 4 Tell the class about your partner.

*Maria's been to Berlin.*

(Maria's = Maria has)

*She went there two years ago.*

*But she hasn't been to Paris. /  
She's never been to Paris.*

(She's = She has)

## GRAMMAR SPOT

- 1 We use the Present Perfect to talk about experiences in our lives.  
Have you ever (at any time in your life) been to Paris?

- 2 We use the Past Simple to say exactly *when* something happened.  
When did you go to Paris?

I went there	last year.
	two years ago.
	in 1998.

- 3 We make the Present Perfect tense with *has/have + the past participle*.  
Complete the table.

	Positive	Negative
I/You/We/They	_____	_____
He/She/It	_____	been to Paris.

- 4 Write *ever* and *never* in the right place in these sentences.

Has he \_\_\_\_\_ been to London?  
He's \_\_\_\_\_ been to London.

►► Grammar Reference 14.1 p134

## PRACTICE

### Past participles

- 1 Here are the past participles of some verbs. Write the infinitive.

eaten	<u>eat</u>	made	_____	given	_____
seen	_____	taken	_____	won	_____
met	_____	driven	_____	had	_____
drunk	_____	cooked	_____	stayed	_____
flown	_____	bought	_____	done	_____

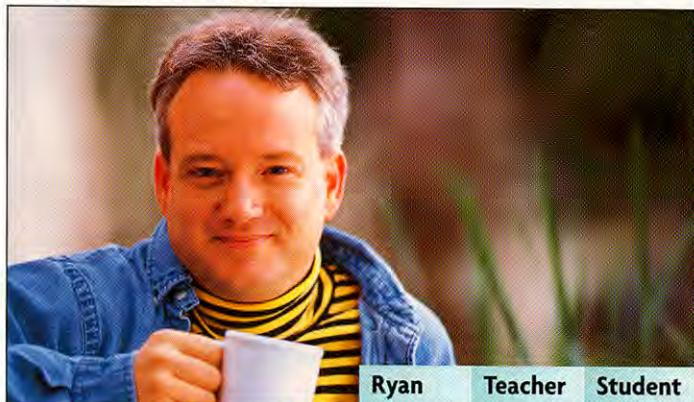
- 2 Which are the two regular verbs?

- 3 What are the Past Simple forms of the verbs?

- 4 Look at the list of irregular verbs on p142 and check your answers.

## The life of Ryan

- 1 **T 14.3** Listen to Ryan talking about his life and tick (✓) the things he has done.



Ryan	Teacher	Student
lived in a foreign country	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
worked for a big company	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
stayed in an expensive hotel	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
flown in a jumbo jet	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
cooked a meal for ten (or more) people	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
met a famous person	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
seen a play by Shakespeare	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
driven a tractor	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
been to hospital	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
won a competition	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

- 2 Tell your teacher about Ryan and answer your teacher's questions.

He's lived in a foreign country.  
Japan.  
One year.

Which country did he live in?  
How long did he live there?

- 3 Ask your teacher the questions and complete the chart.

Have you ever lived in a foreign country?  
Which country did you live in?

- 4 Ask a partner the questions. Tell the class about your partner.

## A HONEYMOON IN LONDON

Present Perfect + yet and just

- 1 Rod and Marilyn come from Christchurch, New Zealand. They are on honeymoon in London. Before they went, they made a list of things they wanted to do there. Read the list below.

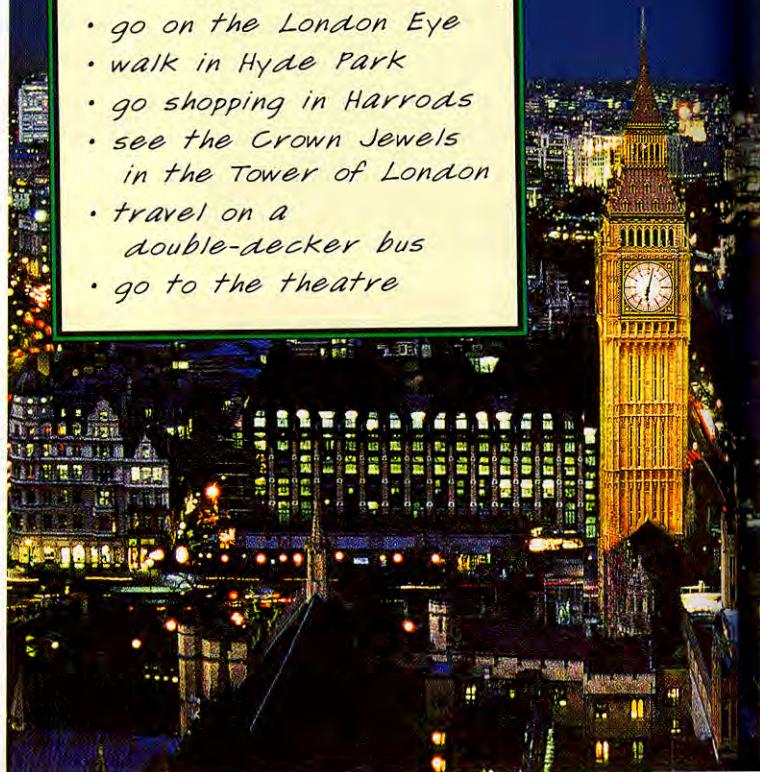


- 2 **T 14.4** Marilyn is phoning her sister Judy, back home in New Zealand. Listen to their conversation. Tick (✓) the things she and Rod have done.

### LONDON

Things to do -

- go to Buckingham Palace
- see the Houses of Parliament
- have a boat ride on the River Thames
- go on the London Eye
- walk in Hyde Park
- go shopping in Harrods
- see the Crown Jewels in the Tower of London
- travel on a double-decker bus
- go to the theatre



## PRACTICE

### I've just done it

- 1 Work with a partner. Make questions with *yet* and answers with *just*.

Have you done the washing-up yet?

Yes, I've just done it.

### GRAMMAR SPOT

- 1 Complete the sentences.
- 1 Have you \_\_\_\_\_ the Crown Jewels **yet**?
  - 2 We \_\_\_\_\_ been to the theatre **yet**.
  - 3 We've **just** \_\_\_\_\_ a boat ride on the Thames.
- 2 Where do we put *yet* in a sentence? Where do we put *just* in a sentence?
- 3 We can only use *yet* with **two** of the following. Which two?
- Positive sentences
  - Questions
  - Negative sentences

► Grammar Reference 14.2 p134

- 3 Look at the list with a partner. Say what Rod and Marilyn have done and what they haven't done yet.

They've travelled on a double-decker bus.

They haven't seen the Crown Jewels yet.

T 14.4 Listen again and check.



- 1 do the washing-up
- 2 do the shopping
- 3 wash your hair
- 4 clean the car
- 5 make the dinner
- 6 meet the new student
- 7 have a coffee
- 8 give your homework to the teacher
- 9 finish the exercise

### Check it

- 2 Tick (✓) the correct sentence.

- 1  I saw John yesterday.  
 I've seen John yesterday.
- 2  Did you ever eat Chinese food?  
 Have you ever eaten Chinese food?
- 3  Donna won £5,000 last month.  
 Donna has won £5,000 last month.
- 4  I've never drank champagne.  
 I've never drunk champagne.
- 5  Tom has ever been to America.  
 Tom has never been to America.
- 6  Has your sister yet had the baby?  
 Has your sister had the baby yet?
- 7  I haven't finished my homework yet.  
 I've finished my homework yet.
- 8  Did she just bought a new car?  
 Has she just bought a new car?

## READING AND SPEAKING

### How to live to be 100

- Who is the oldest person you know? How old is he/she? What do you know about their lives? Why do you think they have lived so long? Tell the class.
- These words are in the texts. Write them in the correct column.

pneumonia ambulance driver engineer heart attack  
lung cancer rheumatic fever secretary dressmaker

Jobs	Illnesses

- Read the introduction. Are similar facts true for your country?

### How to live to be 100

More and more people are living to be 100 years old. There are now 4,400 centenarians in Britain – 10 times more than there were 40 years ago. Professor Grimley Evans of Oxford University believes that future generations will live even longer, to 115 years and more. Here are the stories of three people who have lived to be 100.

- Work in groups of three. Each choose a different person and read about her/him. Answer the questions.
  - What jobs has she/he had in her/his life?
  - Where does he/she live now?
  - Which countries has she/he been to?
  - Did he/she marry and have children?
  - Is her husband/his wife still alive?
  - When and why did she/he give up smoking cigarettes?
  - What do you learn about other people in his/her family?
  - Has she/he ever been very ill?
  - What food does he/she like?
  - What exercise does she/he like doing?
- Work with your group. Compare the three people, using your answers.

#### What do you think?

- Why do you think these people have lived so long? How many reasons can you find?
- Would you like to live to be 100? Why/why not?

## Joyce Bews

Joyce Bews was 100 last year. She was born and grew up in Portsmouth on the south coast of England, where she still lives. For many years she was a dressmaker, and she didn't marry until she was 65. Her husband died of lung cancer only 10 weeks after they married. It was then that she gave up smoking. Joyce has had only one serious illness in her life – she had pneumonia when she was 20. She has lived in Australia and America. She lived in Australia after her husband died, and she went to America when she was 75. She has just returned from a holiday in Spain with her niece, aged 75. She says: 'I'm not sure why I've lived so long. I've never exercised but I've always eaten well, lots of fruit. My youngest brother has just died, aged 90.'





## Alice Patterson-Smythe

Alice Patterson-Smythe was born just over 100 years ago in Edinburgh. She now lives in Norfolk. She drove ambulances in the First World War, and worked as a school secretary until she retired. She has been a widow for 25 years and has three children, six grandchildren, and 11 great-grandchildren. She smoked quite a lot when she was a young girl but she gave up when she was 68 because she had a heart attack. Her nineties were the best years of her life because her millionaire grandson took her on his aeroplane to visit Tokyo, Los Angeles, and Miami. She says: 'I love life. I play golf once a week and do Latin American dancing, and I eat lots of fruit and vegetables. We are a long-lived family – my mother was 95 when she died.'

## Tommy Harrison

Tommy Harrison is exactly 100 years old. He's a retired engineer. His wife, Maude, died 14 years ago. They had no children and now he lives alone in his flat in Bristol. Tommy has smoked all his life. First he smoked cigarettes, about 10 a day, but 40 years ago he changed to a pipe. He has only been ill once in his life, and that was just before the First World War, when he had rheumatic fever. The only time he visits his doctor is to get a certificate to say that he can still drive his car. Every day he has a full English breakfast – bacon, eggs, toast and marmalade. He has only been abroad once, to France during the war. He says: 'I still go dancing and swimming but I don't want to live for ever, perhaps 12 more months. My father lived until he was 99.'



## LISTENING

### Leaving on a jet plane

- T 14.5** Close your books and your eyes and listen to a song. What is it about?
- Read the words of the song. Choose the word on the right which best completes the line.

## Leaving on a jet plane



All my <sup>(1)</sup> are packed, I'm ready to go,  
I'm standing here outside your <sup>(2)</sup>,  
I <sup>(3)</sup> to wake you up to say goodbye,  
But the dawn is breaking,  
It's early morn',  
The taxi's <sup>(4)</sup>,  
He's blowing his <sup>(5)</sup>,  
Already I'm so lonesome  
I could <sup>(6)</sup>.

*Chorus* So kiss me and <sup>(7)</sup> for me,  
<sup>(8)</sup> me that you'll wait for me,  
<sup>(9)</sup> me like you'll never let me go,  
'Cos I'm leaving on a jet plane,  
I don't know when I'll be back again.  
Oh babe, I hate to go.

There's so <sup>(10)</sup> times I've let you down,  
So many times I've <sup>(11)</sup> around,  
I tell you now  
They don't mean a thing.  
Every <sup>(12)</sup> I go, I'll think of you  
Every song I sing, I'll sing for you  
When I <sup>(13)</sup> back  
I'll wear your wedding <sup>(14)</sup>.

1 bags suitcases  
2 window door  
3 hate want

4 here waiting  
5 horn trumpet  
6 cry die

7 laugh smile  
8 tell say  
9 love hold

10 much many  
11 played walked

12 time place  
13 come go  
14 ring dress

- Listen again and check the words. Sing along!

# EVERYDAY ENGLISH

## At the airport

1 What do you do at an airport? Read the sentences and put them in the correct order.

- You wait in the departure lounge.
- You check in your luggage and get a boarding pass.
- You board the plane.
- You go through passport control.
- You get a trolley for your luggage.
- You check the departures board for your gate number.
- You arrive at the airport.

2 **T 14.6** Listen to the airport announcements and complete the chart.

FLIGHT NUMBER	DESTINATION	GATE NUMBER	REMARK
BA 516	GENEVA	4	LAST CALL
SK			DELAYED
A F			NOW BOARDING GATE
LH			NOW BOARDING GATE
VS			WAIT IN LOUNGE



3 **T 14.7** Listen to the conversations. Who are the people? Where are they? Choose from these places.

- in the arrival hall
- in the departure lounge
- at the departure gate
- at the check-in desk

4 Complete each conversation with the correct question.

When can we see each other again?  
Did you have a good honeymoon?  
Did the announcement say gate 4 or 14?  
have you got much hand luggage?

- 1 A Listen! ... BA 516 to Geneva. That's our flight.  
B \_\_\_\_\_ ?  
A I couldn't hear. I think it said 4.  
B Look! There it is on the departure board. It is gate 4.  
A OK. Come on! Let's go.

- 2 A Can I have your ticket, please?  
B Yes, of course.  
A Thank you. How many suitcases have you got?  
B Just one.  
A And \_\_\_\_\_ ?  
B Just this bag.  
A That's fine.  
B Oh ... can I have a seat next to the window?  
A Yes, that's OK. Here's your boarding pass. Have a nice flight!

**T 14.7** Listen and check. Practise the conversations with a partner.

5 Work with a partner. Make more conversations at each of the places.

- 3 A Rod! Marilyn! Over here!  
B Hi! Judy! Great to see you!  
A It's great to see you too. You look terrific!  
\_\_\_\_\_ ?  
B Fantastic. Everything was fantastic.  
A Well, you haven't missed anything here.  
Nothing much has happened at all!
- 4 A There's my flight. It's time to go.  
B Oh no! It's been a wonderful two weeks.  
I can't believe it's over.  
A I know. \_\_\_\_\_ ?  
B Soon, I hope. I'll write every day.  
A I'll phone too. Goodbye.  
B Goodbye. Give my love to your family.

# Tapescripts

## Unit 1

**T 1.1** see p6

**T 1.2**

- A Hello. My name's Richard. What's your name?  
B Kurt.  
A Where are you from, Kurt?  
B I'm from Hamburg. Where are you from?  
A I'm from London.

**T 1.3** see p7

**T 1.4** Listen carefully!

- 1 He's from Spain.
- 2 What's her name?
- 3 They're from Brazil.
- 4 Where's she from?
- 5 He's a teacher in Italy.

**T 1.5** see p9

**T 1.6** Yasmina

My name's Yasmina Kamal and I'm a student. I'm 19. I'm not married. I have one sister and two brothers. I live in a flat in Cairo, Egypt. I want to learn English because it's an international language.

**T 1.7** The alphabet song

A B C D E F G  
H I J K L M N O P  
L M N O P Q R S T  
L M N O P Q R S T  
U V W X Y Z

That is the English alphabet!

**T 1.8** see p10

**T 1.9** Telephone numbers

682 947  
8944 5033  
020 7399 7050

**T 1.10** What are the numbers?

- 1 Hello. 01913 786 499.
- 2 My brother has four children.
- 3 I have 10 stamps in my bag.
- 4 Hello, extension 4177.
- 5 I live at number 19.
- 6 Goodbye. See you at five.

**T 1.11** Everyday conversations

- 1 Hello, extension 3442.  
Hello, Mary. This is Edward. How are you?  
I'm fine, thank you. And you?  
I'm OK, thanks.

- 2 Goodbye, Marcus.  
Goodbye, Bianca. Have a nice day.  
Thanks, Marcus. See you this evening!  
Yes, at seven in the cinema.
- 3 Hello, 270899.  
Hi, Flora! It's me, Leo. How are you?  
Not bad, thanks. And you?  
Very well. How are the children?  
They're fine.

## Unit 2

**T 2.1** Keesha Anderson

- 1 A What's her surname?  
B Anderson.
- 2 A What's her first name?  
B Keesha.
- 3 A Where's she from?  
B London, England.
- 4 A What's her job?  
B She's a journalist.
- 5 A What's her address?  
B 42, Muswell Hill Road, London N10 3JD.
- 6 A What's her phone number?  
B 020 8863 5741.
- 7 A How old is she?  
B Twenty-eight.
- 8 A Is she married?  
B No, she isn't.

**T 2.2** see p13

**T 2.3** see p14

**T 2.4** Adjectives

- 1 He's old. She's young.
- 2 It's easy. It's difficult.
- 3 It's new. It's old.
- 4 It's fast. It's slow.
- 5 It's lovely. It's horrible.
- 6 They're hot. They're cold.
- 7 They're cheap. They're expensive.
- 8 It's small. It's big.

**T 2.5** see p17

**T 2.6** Dorita in New York

D = Dorita O = Orlando

- 1 D Hello. My name's Dorita.  
O Hello, Dorita. I'm Orlando.
- D Where are you from, Orlando?  
O I'm from Italy, from Rome. And you?  
Where are you from?  
D I'm from Argentina.
- O From Buenos Aires?  
D Yes, that's right.

- I = Isabel C = class D = Dorita
- 2 I Good morning everybody.  
C Good morning, Isabel.  
I How are you all?  
C Fine.  
Good.  
OK.  
I How are you Dorita?  
D I'm fine thank you. And you?  
I Very well. Now listen everybody ...  
M = Marnie D = Dorita A = Annie
  - 3 M Bye, Dorita. Have a nice day.  
D Pardon?  
A Have a good day at the school of English.  
D Oh, yes. Thank you. Same to you.  
M What's your teacher called?  
D My teacher called?  
A Your teacher's name – what is it?  
D Ah, yes. Her name's Isabel.  
M And is she good?  
D My teacher good?  
A Yeah. Isabel, your teacher, is she a good teacher?  
D Oh yes, yes. Very good, very nice.

**T 2.7** see p18

**T 2.8**

- 1 That's five pounds fifty, please.
- 2 Look, it's only twelve pounds.
- 3 Here you are. Twenty p change.
- 4 Pizza is three pounds seventy-five.
- 5 One hundred pounds for that is very expensive.
- 6 Nine pounds fifteen, not nine pounds fifty.

**T 2.9** see p19

**T 2.10** In a snack bar

- 1 A Good morning.  
B Good morning. Can I have an orange juice, please?  
A Here you are. Anything else?  
B No, thanks.  
A Ninety p, please.  
B Thanks.  
A Thank you.
- 2 A Hi. Can I help?  
B Yes. Can I have a tuna and egg salad, please?  
A Anything to drink?  
B Yeah. A mineral water, please.  
A OK. Here you are.  
B How much is that?  
A Four pounds ninety-five, please.  
B Thanks.

# Unit 3

## T 3.1 see p20

## T 3.2

- 1 She's a scientist. He's a doctor.
- 2 Alison comes from England. Bob comes from England, too.
- 3 She lives in a big city, but he lives in a small town.
- 4 She works three days a week. He works 16 hours a day non-stop.
- 5 He speaks to sick people on his radio. She speaks three languages.
- 6 She loves her job and he loves his job, too.
- 7 She has a daughter. He isn't married.
- 8 She likes skiing and going for walks in her free time. He never has free time.

## T 3.3 Questions and answers

Where does Alison come from? Cambridge, in England.  
What does she do? She's a scientist.  
Does she speak French? Yes, she does.  
Does she speak Spanish? No, she doesn't.

## T 3.4

- 1 Where does Bob come from? England.
- 2 What does he do? He's a doctor.
- 3 Does he fly to help people? Yes, he does.
- 4 Does he speak French and German? No, he doesn't.

## T 3.5 Is it true or false?

- 1 Philippe comes from Paris.
- 2 Philippe lives in London.
- 3 He works in the centre of Paris.
- 4 He speaks English very well.
- 5 He's married.
- 6 Keiko lives and works in New York.
- 7 She speaks French and German.
- 8 She plays tennis in her free time.
- 9 She isn't married.
- 10 Mark works in an office in Moscow.
- 11 He has three sons.
- 12 He likes playing football in his free time.

## T 3.6 Listen carefully!

- 1 She likes her job.
- 2 She loves walking.
- 3 He isn't married.
- 4 Does he have three children?
- 5 What does he do?

## T 3.7 Mr McSporran's day

- 1 A Good afternoon. Can I have two ice-creams, please?  
B Chocolate or vanilla?  
A One chocolate, one vanilla please.  
B That's £1.80. Anything else?  
A No, thank you.

- 2 A Only two letters for you this morning, Mrs Craig.  
B Thank you very much, Mr McSporran. And how's Mrs McSporran this morning?  
A Oh, she's very well, thank you. She's busy in the shop.
- 3 A A glass of wine before bed, my dear?  
B Oh, yes please.  
A Here you are.  
B Thank you, my dear. I'm very tired this evening.
- 4 A Hello Mr McSporran!  
B Good morning, boys and girls. Hurry up, we're late.  
A Can I sit here, Mr McSporran?  
C No, no, I want to sit there.  
B Be quiet all of you, and SIT DOWN!

## T 3.8 What time is it?

- |                          |                             |
|--------------------------|-----------------------------|
| It's five o'clock.       | It's eight o'clock.         |
| It's half past five.     | It's half past eleven.      |
| It's quarter past five.  | It's quarter past two.      |
| It's quarter to six.     | It's quarter to nine.       |
| It's five past five.     | It's ten past five.         |
| It's twenty past five.   | It's twenty-five past five. |
| It's twenty-five to six. | It's twenty to six.         |
| It's ten to six.         | It's five to six.           |

## T 3.9 see p27

# Unit 4

## T 4.1 Bobbi Brown's weekdays

My weekends are fast and exciting. My weekdays are fast and domestic! I have two sons, Dylan 7, and Dakota 5. Every morning I get up one hour before them, at 6.00, and I go to the gym. I come home and I make breakfast, then I take them to school. On Mondays I always go shopping. I buy all the food for the week. I often cook dinner in the evenings, but not every day because I don't like cooking. Fortunately, my husband, Don, loves cooking. On Tuesdays and Thursdays I visit my father. He lives on the next block. Every afternoon I pick up the kids from school. In the evenings Don and I usually relax, but sometimes we visit friends. We never go out on Friday evenings because I start work so early on Saturdays.

## T 4.2 Questions and answers

B = Bobbi

- A Where do you work?  
B In New York.
- A Do you like your work?  
B Yes, I do.
- A Do you relax at weekends?  
B No, I don't.
- A Why don't you relax at weekends?  
B Because I work.

## T 4.3

- 1 What time do you go to bed? At 11 o'clock.
- 2 Where do you go on holiday? To Spain or Portugal.
- 3 What do you do on Sundays? I always relax.
- 4 When do you do your homework? After dinner.
- 5 Who do you live with? My mother and sisters.
- 6 Why do you like your job? Because it's interesting.
- 7 How do you travel to school? By bus.
- 8 Do you go out on Friday evenings? Yes, I do sometimes.

## T 4.4 Listen carefully!

- 1 What does she do on Sundays?
- 2 Do you stay home on Thursday evenings?
- 3 He lives here.
- 4 What do you do on Saturday evenings?
- 5 I read a lot.
- 6 Why don't you like your job?

## T 4.5 Favourite seasons

### 1 Al Wheeler from Canada

We have long, cold winters and short, hot summers. We have a holiday home near a lake, so in summer I go sailing a lot and I play baseball, but in winter I often play ice hockey and go ice-skating. My favourite season is autumn, or fall, as we say in North America. I love the colours of the trees – red, gold, orange, yellow, and brown.

### 2 Manuela da Silva from Portugal

People think it's always warm and sunny in Portugal, but January and February are often cold, wet, and grey. I don't like winter. I usually meet friends in restaurant and bars and we chat. Sometimes we go to a Brazilian bar. I love Brazilian music. But then suddenly it's summer and at weekends we drive to the beach, sunbathe, and go swimming. I love summer.

### 3 Toshi Suzuki from Japan

I work for Pentax cameras, in the export department. I don't have a lot of free time, but I have one special hobby – taking photographs, of course! I like taking photographs of flowers, especially in spring. Sometimes, after work, I relax in a bar near my office with friends. My friend, Shigeru, likes singing pop songs in the bar. This has a special name, *karaoke*. I don't sing – I'm too shy!

#### T 4.6 Who's who?

M = Manuela J = Jane

F = Manuela's friends

- 1 M Hello, everybody! This is my friend Jane from England.

F Hi!

Hello!

Hello Jane!

J Hello. Pleased to meet you.

M Sit down here, Jane.

J Thanks.

F Do you like the music, Jane?

J Yes, I do. Is it American?

F No, it's Brazilian jazz!

M Come and have a drink, Jane.

T = Toshi J = Ann Jones

- 2 T Mrs Jones! How do you do?

J How do you do?

T Please come in. You're from our office in London, aren't you?

J Yes, that's right.

T Welcome to Tokyo! Do you like our headquarters here?

J Yes. It's very big. How many people work here?

T About six thousand people. Do you want to see our offices?

A = Al M = Mick

- 3 A What do you want to do today, Mick?

M Ooh, I don't know. What do you ...

A Ah! Do you like sailing?

M Yes, very much. I sometimes go sailing in Scotland but not very often.

A OK – so today it's sailing and fishing on the lake.

M Fantastic. I love fishing too – we go fishing a lot in Scotland.

#### T 4.7 Everyday conversations

- 1 A I'm sorry I'm late. The traffic is bad today.

B Don't worry. Come and sit down. We're on page 25.

- 2 A Excuse me.

B Yes?

A Do you have a dictionary?

B I'm sorry, I don't. It's at home.

A That's OK.

- 3 A It's very hot in here. Can I open the window?

B Really? I'm quite cold.

A OK. It doesn't matter.

- 4 A Excuse me!

B Can I help you?

A Can I have a film for my camera?

B How many exposures?

A Pardon?

B How many *exposures*?

A What does 'exposures' mean

B How many pictures? 24? 36? 40?

A Ah! Now I understand! 40, please.

## Unit 5

#### T 5.1 Questions and answers

A Is there a television?

B Yes, there is.

A Is there a radio?

B No, there isn't.

A Are there any books?

B Yes, there are.

A How many books are there?

B There are a lot.

A Are there any photographs?

B No, there aren't.

#### T 5.2 Description of a living room

There are three people in the living room. A man and a woman on the sofa and a little girl in the armchair. There's a radio on the coffee table and a rug under it. There's a cat on the rug in front of the fire. There are a lot of pictures on the walls but there aren't any photographs. There are two plants on the floor next to the television and some flowers on the small table next to the sofa.

#### T 5.3 Helen's kitchen

H = Helen B = Bob

H And this is the kitchen.

B Mmm, it's very nice.

H Well, it's not very big, but there are a lot of cupboards. And there's a new fridge, and a cooker. That's new, too.

B But what's *in* all these cupboards?

H Well, not a lot. There are some cups, but there aren't any plates. And I have some knives and forks, but I don't have any spoons!

B Do you have any glasses?

H No. Sorry.

B Never mind. We can drink this champagne from those cups! Cheers!

#### T 5.4 What's in Pierre's briefcase?

What's in my briefcase? Well, there's a newspaper – a French newspaper – and there's a dictionary – my French/English dictionary. I have some pens, three I think. Also I have a notebook for vocabulary, I write words in that every day. And of course I have my keys, my car keys and my house keys. Oh yes, very important, there are some photos of my family, my wife and my daughter and there's my mobile phone. I ring my home in Paris every night. That's all I think. I don't have any stamps and my address book is in my hotel.

#### T 5.5 Homes around the world

##### 1 Manola from Lisbon

I live in the old town near the sea. It is called the Alfama. I have a very beautiful flat. There's just *one* room in my flat, one very big room with one very big window. My bed's next to the window so I see the sea and all the lights of the city when I go to sleep. I live alone, but I have a cat and I'm near the shops and lots of friends come to visit me. I love my flat.

#### 2 Ray and Elsie from Toronto

Elsie Our house is quite old, about fifty years old. It's quite near to the city centre. We have a living room, quite a big kitchen and three bedrooms, but the room we all love is our family room.

Ray Yes, there's a TV and a stereo and a large comfortable sofa in there, and some big, old armchairs. We love sitting there in winter with the snow outside.

Elsie Our children aren't at home now, they both have jobs in the USA, so most of the time it's just Ray and me.

#### 3 Brad from Malibu

My house is fantastic. It's right next to the sea. My neighbours are very rich. Some of them are famous film stars. In my house there are ten rooms, five are bedrooms, and everything is white, the floors, the walls, the sofas, everything. I also have a swimming pool, a cinema and an exercise room. I live here alone. I'm not married at the moment. My ex-wife is French. She lives in Paris now with our three sons.

#### 4 Alise from Samoa

I live with my family in a house near the sea. We have an open house, ... er ... that is ... er ... our house doesn't have any walls. Houses in Samoa don't have walls because it is very, very hot, but we have blinds to stop the rain and sun. Our house is in the old style. We have only *one* room for living and sleeping, so it is both a bedroom and a living room. We have rugs and we sit and sleep on the floor.

#### T 5.6 Asking for directions

- 1 A Excuse me! Is there a chemist near here?

B Yes. It's over there.

A Thanks.

- 2 A Excuse me! Is there a newsagent near here?

B Yes. It's in Church Street. Take the first street on the right. It's next to the music shop.

A Oh yes. Thanks.

- 3 A Excuse me! Is there a restaurant near here?

B There's a Chinese one in Park Lane next to the bank, and there's an Italian one in Church Street next to the travel agent.

A Is that one far?

B No. Just two minutes, that's all.

- 4 A Is there a post office near here?

B Go straight ahead, and it's on the left, next to the pub.

A Thanks a lot.

# Unit 6

## T 6.1 What can you do?

- a She can use a computer.
- b We can't understand the question.
- c 'Can dogs swim?' 'Yes, they can.'
- d He can ski really well.
- e I can't spell your name.
- f 'Can you speak Japanese?' 'No, I can't.'

## T 6.2 Listen and repeat

I can speak French.  
Can you speak French?  
Yes, I can.  
No, I can't.

## T 6.3 Listen and complete the sentences

- 1 I can speak French, but I can't speak German.
- 2 He can't dance, but he can sing.
- 3 'Can you cook?' 'Yes, I can.'
- 4 They can ski, but they can't swim.
- 5 We can dance and we can sing.
- 6 'Can she drive?' 'No, she can't.'

## T 6.4 Tina can't cook. Can you?

Well, there are a lot of things I can't do. I can't drive a car, but I want to have lessons soon. I can't speak French but I can speak Italian, my mother's Italian, and we often go to Italy. My mother's a really good cook, she can cook really well, not just Italian food, all kinds of food, but I can't cook at all. I just love eating! What about sports? Er ... I think I'm good at quite a lot of sports. I can play tennis, and ski, sometimes we go skiing in the Italian Alps, and of course I can swim. But musical instruments – no – I can't play any at all – no I'm not very musical, but I love dancing! Of course I can use a computer – all my friends can.

## T 6.5 Listen and repeat

It was Monday yesterday. We were at school.  
'Was it hot?' 'Yes, it was.'  
'Were you tired?' 'Yes, we were.'

## T 6.6 Charlotte's party

- K = Kim M = Max
- K Were you at Charlotte's party last Saturday?
  - M Yes, I was.
  - K Was it good?
  - M Well, it was OK.
  - K Were there many people?
  - M Yes, there were.
  - K Was Henry there?
  - M No, he wasn't. And where were you? Why weren't you there?
  - K Oh ... I couldn't go because I was at Mark's party! It was brilliant!

## T 6.7 Directory Enquiries

- Operator International Directory Enquiries.  
Which country, please?
- Operator And which town?
- Operator Can I have the last name, please?
- Operator And the initial?
- Operator What's the address?
- Recorded message The number you require is 006198 4681133.

## T 6.8 On the phone

- 1 A Hello.  
B Hello. Can I speak to Jo, please?  
A This is Jo.  
B Oh! Hi, Jo. This is Pat. Is Sunday still OK for tennis?  
A Yes. That's fine.  
B Great! See you on Sunday at ten, then.  
Bye!  
A Bye!
- 2 A Hello.  
B Hello. Is that Liz?  
A No it isn't. I'll just get her.  
C Hello, Liz here.  
B Hi, Liz. It's Tom. Listen! There's a party at my house on Saturday. Can you come?  
C Oh sorry, Tom. I can't. It's my sister's wedding.  
B Oh, never mind. Perhaps next time.  
Bye!  
C Bye!
- 3 A Good morning, Barclays Bank, Watford. How can I help you?  
B Good morning. Can I speak to the manager, please?  
A I'm afraid Mr Smith isn't in his office at the moment. Can I take a message?  
B Don't worry. I'll ring back later.  
A All right. Goodbye.  
B Goodbye.

# Unit 7

## T 7.1 Mattie Smith

Mattie Smith is 91 years old. She lives alone in Atlanta, Georgia. She starts her day at 7.30. First she has a bath, next she cleans the house, and then she sits outside on her verandah and thinks about her past life. Then she writes poems about it.

## T 7.2 see p52

## T 7.3 Listen and repeat

- looked
- worked
- loved
- learned
- earned
- married
- died
- hated
- wanted

## T 7.4 Listen to Mattie

I worked from 6.00 in the morning until 10.00 at night. Sixteen hours in the cotton fields and I only earned \$2 a day. I sure hated that job but I loved the poems in my head. I really wanted to learn to read and write. When I was sixteen I married Hubert, and soon there were six children, five sons, then a daughter, Lily. Hubert died just before she was born. That was sixty-five years ago. So I looked after my family alone. There was no time for learning, but my children, they all learned to read and write – that was important to me. And when did I learn to read and write? I didn't learn until I was 86, and now I have three books of poems.

## T 7.5 Questions and answers

- 1 A When did she start work?  
B When she was eight years old.
- 2 A Where did she work?  
B In the cotton fields.
- 3 A Who did she live with?  
B Her mother and sisters.
- 4 A How many hours did she work?  
B Sixteen hours a day.
- 5 A How much did she earn?  
B \$2 a day.
- 6 A Who did she marry?  
B Hubert.
- 7 A When did Hubert die?  
B Sixty-five years ago.
- 8 A When did she learn to read?  
B She didn't learn until she was 86.

## T 7.6 Listen carefully!

- worked
- lived
- started
- married
- loved
- hated
- finished
- looked
- died
- visited
- cleaned
- liked

## T 7.7 Listen and repeat

- had
- began
- came
- went
- did
- left
- got
- studied
- became
- won
- lost
- bought
- met

### T 7.8 Simon's 1990s

What do I remember of the nineties ... er ... well, I left school in 1994 and I went to university. I studied graphic design – it was really good. I had a good time. Then after university, in 1997, I was really lucky. I got a job immediately. A job with Saatchi and Saatchi, they're an advertising agency in London. Soon after that, 1998 it was, I met Zoë, she's my girlfriend. She has a good job, too, and we bought a flat together in 1999.

The only sport I like is football, so I remember when France won the World Cup in 1998. Brazil lost in '98 but they won in '94.

I remember when Tony Blair became Prime Minister in 1997, that was just after I started at Saatchi and Saatchi. Oh, and I remember Bill Clinton and all the problems he had in his last years in the White House. And the Euro – eleven countries in Europe began to use the Euro in 1999, but Britain didn't.

Oh yes – and of course I remember Princess Diana – she died in a car crash in Paris in '97 and millions of people came to London for her funeral. I was there. I can remember it really well.

### T 7.9 Listen and repeat

1 walk	7 work
2 listen	8 war
3 know	9 island
4 write	10 build
5 eight	11 resign
6 farm	12 daughter

### T 7.10 Listen and repeat

1 born	5 knives
2 bought	6 wrong
3 world	7 cupboard
4 answer	8 Christmas

### T 7.11 Special days

- 1 A Ugh! Work again! I hate Monday mornings!  
B Me, too. Did you have a nice weekend?  
A Yes. It was brilliant.
- 2 Happy birthday to you.  
Happy birthday to you.  
Happy birthday, dear Tommy,  
Happy birthday to you.
- 3 A Did you get any Valentine cards?  
B Yes, I did. Listen to this.  
*Roses are red. Violets are blue  
You are my Valentine  
And I love you.*  
A Oooh-er! Do you know who it's from?  
B No idea!
- 4 A Congratulations!  
B Oh ... thank you very much.  
A When's the happy day?  
B Pardon?  
A Your wedding day. When is it?  
B Oh! We're not sure. Perhaps some time in June.
- 5 A It's midnight! Happy New Year everybody!  
B Happy New Year!

### C Happy New Year!

- 6 A Thank goodness! It's Friday!  
B Yeah. Have a nice weekend!  
A Same to you.

### T 7.12 Listen and answer

- 1 Did you have a nice weekend?
- 2 Did you get any Valentine cards?
- 3 Congratulations!
- 4 Happy New Year!
- 5 Have a nice weekend!

## Unit 8

### T 8.1 Inventions

#### JEANS

Two Americans, Jacob Davis and Levi Strauss, made the first jeans in 1873. Davis bought cloth from Levi's shop. He told Levi that he had a special way to make strong trousers for workmen. The first jeans were blue. In 1935 jeans became fashionable for women after they saw them in *Vogue* magazine. In the 1970s, Calvin Klein earned \$12.5 million a week from jeans.

#### TELEVISION

A Scotsman, John Logie Baird, transmitted the first television picture on 25 October, 1925. The first thing on television was a boy who worked in the office next to Baird's workroom in London. In 1927 Baird sent pictures from London to Glasgow. In 1928 he sent pictures to New York, and also produced the first colour TV pictures.

#### ASPIRIN

Felix Hofman a 29-year-old chemist who worked for the German company Bayer, invented the drug Aspirin in March 1899. He gave the first aspirin to his father for his arthritis. By 1950 it was the best-selling painkiller in the world, and in 1969 the Apollo astronauts took it to the moon. The Spanish philosopher, José Ortega y Gasset, called the 20th century 'The Age of Aspirin'.

### T 8.2 Negatives and positives

- 1 Two Germans didn't make the first jeans. Two Americans made them.
- 2 Davis didn't sell cloth in Levi's shop. He bought cloth from Levi's shop.
- 3 Women didn't see pictures of jeans in *She* magazine. They saw them in *Vogue*.
- 4 Baird didn't send pictures from London to Paris. He sent pictures from London to Glasgow.
- 5 Felix Hofman didn't give the first aspirin to his mother. He gave it to his father.
- 6 A Spanish philosopher didn't call the 19th century, 'the Age of Aspirin'. He called the 20th century, 'the Age of Aspirin'.

### T 8.3 see p62

### T 8.4 Listen and repeat

1 recipe	6 worried
2 chat	7 delicious
3 shy	8 sandwich
4 funny	9 machine
5 face	10 century

### T 8.5 Everyday conversations

- 1 A Why didn't you laugh at my joke?  
B Because it wasn't very funny. That's why!
- 2 A Hello. Hello. I can't hear you. Who is it?  
B It's me, Jonathon ... JONATHON! I'm on my mobile phone.
- 3 A Oh, Jonathon! Hi! Sorry, I can't chat now. I'm in a hurry.
- 4 A Good luck in your exams!  
B Oh, thank you. I always get so nervous before exams.
- 5 A Mmmmm! Did you make this chocolate cake?  
B I did. Do you like it?  
A Like it? I *love* it. It's delicious. Can I have the recipe?
- 5 A Come on, Tommy. Say hello to Auntie Mavis. Don't be shy.  
B Hello, Auntie Mavis.

### T 8.6

#### Love on the Internet – Debbie and Per

**Debbie** I'm really quite shy. I find it difficult to talk to people face to face. But I find it easy to chat on the Internet. I met Per there about a year ago. It was on a chatline called 'the Chat Room'. He was so funny.

**Per** But I'm only funny on the Internet! Anyway, we chatted on the Internet for a year, we exchanged hundreds of e-mails and some photographs. I wanted to phone Debbie but ...

**Debbie** I said no. I was worried. I didn't want it to end.

**Per** She didn't even give me her address. But finally she said OK, I could phone, so I did, and we spoke for an hour. It was very expensive! That was six months ago. Then she sent me her address and ...

**Debbie** ... that was three months ago and one week later, there was a knock at the door and I knew before I opened it. Somehow I wasn't worried any more. I opened the door and ...

**Per** ... and I stood there with some flowers ...

**Debbie** ... lots of flowers. Red roses. Beautiful ... and ...

**Per** ... and well, we fell in love and ...

**Both** ... and we got married last Saturday.

## Love in a bottle – Rosa and Vincent

- Rosa I love the sea. I like walking on the beach. One day, it was five years ago now, I was on the beach and I stood on something, it was a bottle, a green bottle. I could see something inside. Some paper, so I broke the bottle, it was a letter but ...
- Vincent ... but you couldn't read it ...
- Rosa No, I couldn't. You see it was in English and I couldn't speak English then.
- Vincent You can speak it well now ...
- Rosa No, not really, but anyway. I asked a friend to translate the letter for me. We couldn't believe it. A man in America – he wanted a wife, but the letter was ten years old.
- Vincent And I still wasn't married!
- Rosa But I didn't know that. Anyway for a joke I wrote and sent a photo ...
- Vincent And now, I couldn't believe it. I got this letter and a photo. She looked beautiful. I wrote back immediately and we wrote every week for six months ... and we spoke on the phone and ...
- Rosa ... and finally I flew to America and we met face to face. I was very shy but it was good, very good and now ...
- Vincent ... now, we have three children. We have a house by the sea ...
- Rosa We're very happy. You see, we both love the sea!

## T 8.7 Ordinals

first  
second  
third  
fourth  
fifth  
sixth  
tenth  
twelfth  
thirteenth  
sixteenth  
seventeenth  
twentieth  
twenty-first  
thirtieth  
thirty-first

## T 8.8 Dates

- 1 The first of April  
April the first
- 2 The second of March  
March the second
- 3 The seventeenth of September  
September the seventeenth
- 4 The nineteenth of November  
November the nineteenth
- 5 The twenty-third of June  
June the twenty-third
- 6 The twenty-ninth of February, nineteen  
seventy-six
- 7 The nineteenth of December, nineteen  
eighty-three

- 8 The third of October, nineteen ninety-nine
- 9 The thirty-first of May, two thousand
- 10 The fifteenth of July, two thousand and four

## T 8.9 What's the date?

- 1 The fourth of January
- 2 May the seventh, 1997
- 3 The fifteenth of August, 2001
- 4 A It was a Friday.  
B No, it wasn't. It was a Thursday.  
A No, I remember. It was Friday the thirteenth. The thirteenth of July.
- 5 A Oh no! I forgot your birthday.  
B It doesn't matter, really.  
A It was last Sunday, wasn't it? The thirtieth. November the thirtieth.
- 6 A Hey! Did you know that Shakespeare was born and died on the same day?  
B That's not possible!  
A Yes, it is. He was born on April the twenty-third, fifteen sixty-four and he died on April the twenty-third, sixteen sixteen.

T What do you like then?

- D Well, I like ... er ... I like chocolate and chocolate biscuits ...  
T Yeah! I really like chocolate. Everybody likes chocolate.  
D Yeah!

## T 9.2 see p67

## T 9.3 Questions and answers

- 1 Would you like a cigarette?  
No, thanks. I don't smoke.
- 2 Do you like your teacher?  
Yes. She's very nice.
- 3 Would you like a drink?  
Yes, please. Some Coke, please.
- 4 Can I help you?  
Yes. I'd like a book of stamps, please.
- 5 What sports do you do?  
Well, I like swimming very much.
- 6 Excuse me, are you ready to order?  
Yes. I'd like a steak, please.

## T 9.4 Listen carefully!

- 1 Good afternoon. Can I help you?
- 2 Who's your favourite writer?
- 3 What would you like for your birthday?
- 4 Do you like animals?
- 5 Here's the wine list, sir.
- 6 Have some ice-cream with your strawberries.

## T 9.5

- 1 A Good afternoon. Can I help you?  
B Yes. I'd like some fruit, please.
- 2 A Who's your favourite writer?  
B I like books by John Grisham.
- 3 A What would you like for your birthday?  
B I'd like a new bike.
- 4 A Do you like animals?  
B I like cats, but I don't like dogs.
- 5 A Here's the wine list, sir.  
B We'd like a bottle of French red wine.
- 6 A Have some ice-cream with your strawberries.  
B No, thanks. I don't like ice-cream.

## T 9.6 Going shopping

- B = Barry MP = Miss Potts
- MP Good morning. Can I help you?
- B Yes. I'd like some orange juice, please.
- MP Er ... sorry. There's apple juice but no orange juice.
- B What's that then? Isn't that orange juice?
- MP Oh, yes. So it is! My eyes! Here you are.
- B Thank you, and some milk, please.
- MP Sorry. I sold the last bottle two minutes ago.
- B Oh, dear! What about some coffee?
- MP Yes. Here you are.
- B Thanks. That's orange juice, coffee ... er ... and ... er ... a kilo of apples, please.
- MP I don't sell apples.
- B You don't sell apples! That's strange. What about cheese. Can I have some cheese?
- MP I don't sell cheese, either.

- B You don't sell cheese! That's amazing.  
Now, I want some pizza, but I'm sure you don't sell pizza, do you?
- MP Oh, yes I do. What would you like? Pizza with mushrooms, pizza with cheese and ham, pizza with sausage, or pizza with tomatoes?
- B Wow! Can I have ... er ... some pizza with cheese and tomatoes, please?
- MP Oh, sorry. I forgot. Usually, I have pizza but not on Thursdays. Today's Thursday, isn't it?
- B Yes, it is. Mmm ... OK, ... er ... OK, forget the pizza. What about bread? I don't suppose you have any bread?
- MP Yes, you're right.
- B Pardon?
- MP You're right. There isn't any bread.
- B Tell me. Do you do a lot of business?
- MP Oh, yes sir. This shop is open 24 hours.
- B Really! What do people buy?
- MP All the things you see.
- B Mmmm. OK. That's all for me. How much?
- MP That's £5.60, please.
- B Thank you. Goodbye.
- MP Goodbye sir. See you again soon.
- B I don't think so.

### T 9.7 My favourite food

**Marian**

Well, I love vegetables, all vegetables – I eat meat too – but not much. I think this is why I like Chinese food so much. There are lots of vegetables in Chinese food. Yes, Chinese is my very favourite food, I like the noodles too. Can you eat with chopsticks? I can!

**Graham**

Now in my job, I travel the world, and I like all kinds of food ... but my favourite, my favourite is ... er ... I always have it as soon as I come home ... is a full English breakfast. Bacon, eggs, sausage, mushrooms, tomatoes, and of course toast. I love it, not every day but when I'm at home we have it every Sunday. Mmmm! I'd like it right now – delicious.

**Lucy**

Oh, no question, no problem. I know exactly what my favourite food is. Pasta. All pasta. Especially spaghetti. Pasta with tomato sauce – and I like it best when I'm in Italy. I went on holiday to the Italian lakes last year. The food was wonderful.

**Gavin**

... er ... I'm not sure. No, I know what it is. My ... favourite ... food is Indian food. Friday night I like to go to the pub with friends from work and ... have a few beers, ... er ... no, not too many, ... and after we always go to an Indian restaurant and I have a chicken curry with rice. It's the best! I like it more than chips!

**Sally**

Well, shhh! But my very, very favourite food is chocolate. Chocolate anything, I love it. Chocolate ice-cream, chocolate biscuits, chocolate cake, but especially just a big bar of chocolate. Mmmm! Terrible, isn't it? Go on! Have some of this! My friend brought it back from Switzerland for me!

### T 9.8 Polite requests

- 1 Would you like some more carrots?  
Yes, please. They're delicious.
- 2 Could you pass the salt, please?  
Yes, of course. Here you are.
- 3 Could I have a glass of water, please?  
Do you want fizzy or still?
- 4 Does anybody want more dessert?  
Yes, please. I'd love some. It's delicious.
- 5 How would you like your coffee?  
Black, no sugar, please.
- 6 This is delicious! Can you give me the recipe?  
Yes, of course. I'm glad you like it.
- 7 Do you want help with the washing-up?  
No, of course not. We have a dishwasher.

### T 9.9

- 1 Can I have a cheese sandwich, please?  
Yes, of course. That's £1.75.
- 2 Could you tell me the time, please?  
It's just after ten.
- 3 Can you take me to school?  
Jump in.
- 4 Can I see the menu, please?  
Here you are. And would you like a drink to start?
- 5 Could you lend me some money, please?  
Not again! How much would you like this time?
- 6 Can you help me with my homework, please?  
What is it? French? I can't speak a word of French.
- 7 Can I borrow your dictionary, please?  
Yes, if I can find it. I think it's in my bag.

## Unit 10

### T 10.1 Listen and repeat

The country is cheaper and safer than the city. The city is noisier and dirtier than the country.

The city is more expensive than the country. The city is more exciting than the country.

### T 10.2 Much more than ...

- 1 A Life in the country is slower than city life.  
B Yes, the city's much faster.
- 2 A New York is safer than London.  
B No, it isn't. New York is much more dangerous.
- 3 A Paris is bigger than Madrid.  
B No, it isn't! It's much smaller.

- 4 A Madrid is more expensive than Rome.  
B No, it isn't. Madrid is much cheaper.
- 5 A The buildings in Rome are more modern than the buildings in New York.  
B No, they aren't. They're much older.
- 6 A The Underground in London is better than the Metro in Paris.  
B No! The Underground is much worse.

### T 10.3 Mel's got a better job

- Tara** Why did you leave London? You had a good job.
- Mel** Yes, but I've got a better job here.
- Tara** And you had a big flat in London.
- Mel** Well, I've got a bigger flat here.
- Tara** Really? How many bedrooms has it got?
- Mel** Three. And it's got a garden. It's nicer than my flat in London and it's cheaper.
- Tara** But you haven't got any friends!
- Mel** I've got a lot of friends here. People are much friendlier than in London.
- Tara** But the country's so boring.
- Mel** No, it isn't. It's much more exciting than London. Seacombe has got shops, a cinema, a theatre, and a park. And the air is cleaner and the streets are safer.
- Tara** OK. Everything is wonderful! So when can I visit you?

### T 10.4 The biggest and best!

- 1 That house is very big.  
Yes, it's the biggest house in the village.
- 2 Claridge's is a very expensive hotel.  
Yes, it's the most expensive hotel in London.
- 3 Castle Combe is a very pretty village.  
Yes, it's the prettiest village in England.
- 4 New York is a very cosmopolitan city.  
Yes, it's the most cosmopolitan city in the world.
- 5 Tom Hanks is a very popular film star.  
Yes, he's the most popular film star in America.
- 6 Miss Smith is a very funny teacher.  
Yes, she's the funniest teacher in our school.
- 7 Anna is a very intelligent student.  
Yes, she's the most intelligent student in the class.
- 8 This is a very easy exercise.  
Yes, it's the easiest exercise in the book.

### T 10.5 Listen and respond

- 1 That house is very big.
- 2 Claridge's is a very expensive hotel.
- 3 Castle Combe is a very pretty village.
- 4 New York is a very cosmopolitan city.
- 5 Tom Hanks is a very popular film star.
- 6 Miss Smith is a very funny teacher.
- 7 Anna is a very intelligent student.
- 8 This is a very easy exercise.

### T 10.6 A musical interlude

(three music excerpts)

### T 10.7 Listen and repeat

wood  
theatre  
farm  
village  
factory  
cottage  
field  
church

### T 10.8 To the lake

Drive along Park Road and turn right. Go under the bridge and past the pub. Turn left up the hill, then drive down the hill to the river. Turn right after the farm and the lake is on the right. It takes twenty minutes.

### T 10.9 A drive in the country

Well, I drove out of the garage, along the road, and under the bridge. Then I drove past the pub, up the hill, and down the hill. But then I drove over the river, and then – it was terrible – I went through the hedge, and into the lake!

## Unit 11

### T 11.1 Who's at the party?

O = Oliver M = Monica

- O Oh dear! Monica, I don't know any of these people. Who are they?  
M Don't worry Oliver. They're all very nice. Can you see that man over there? He's sitting down. That's Harry. He's a musician. He works in LA.  
O Sorry, where?  
M You know, LA. Los Angeles.  
O Oh yeah.  
M And he's talking to Mandy. She's wearing a red dress. She's very nice and very rich! She lives in a beautiful old house in the country.  
O Rich, eh?  
M Yes. Rich and married! Next to her is Fiona. She's drinking a glass of red wine. Fiona's my oldest friend, she and I were at school together.  
O And what does Fiona do?  
M She's a writer. She writes children's stories – they're not very good but ... anyway, she's talking to George. He's laughing and smoking a cigar. He's a pilot. He travels the world, thousands of miles every week.  
O And who are those two over there? They're dancing. Mmmm. They know each other very well.  
M Oh, that's Roz and Sam. They're married. They live in the flat upstairs.  
O So ... er ... that's Harry and Mandy and ... er ... it's no good, I can't remember all those names.

### T 11.2 Listen to the questions

- 1 Whose is the baseball cap?
- 2 Whose are the roller blades?
- 3 Whose is the dog?

### T 11.3 who's or whose?

- 1 Who's on the phone?
- 2 I'm going to the pub. Who's coming?
- 3 Wow! Look at that sports car. Whose is it?
- 4 Whose dictionary is this? It's not mine.
- 5 There are books all over the floor. Whose are they?
- 6 Who's the most intelligent in our class?
- 7 Who's got my book?
- 8 Do you know whose jacket this is?

### T 11.4 What a mess!

- A Whose is this tennis racket?  
B It's mine.  
A What's it doing here?  
B I'm playing tennis this afternoon.

### T 11.5 What a wonderful world

I see trees of green  
Red roses too  
I see them bloom for me and you  
And I think to myself  
what a wonderful world.  
I see skies of blue  
and clouds of white  
the bright sunny day  
and the dark starry night  
and I think to myself  
what a wonderful world.  
The colours of the rainbow  
so pretty in the sky  
are also on the faces  
of the people going by.  
I see friends shaking hands  
saying 'How do you do?'  
They're really saying  
'I love you.'  
I hear babies cry  
I watch them grow.  
They'll learn much more  
than you'll ever know  
and I think to myself  
what a wonderful world.  
Yes, I think to myself  
what a wonderful world.

### T 11.6 Vowels and diphthongs

#### Vowels

- 1 red said
- 2 hat that
- 3 kissed list
- 4 green mean
- 5 laugh half
- 6 whose shoes
- 7 short bought

#### Diphthongs

- 1 white night
- 2 near beer
- 3 they pay
- 4 hair wear
- 5 rose knows
- 6 ours flowers

### T 11.7 Tongue twisters

- 1 Four fine fresh fish for you.
- 2 Six silly sisters selling shiny shoes.

- 3 If a dog chews shoes, whose shoes does he choose?

- 4 I'm looking back,  
To see if she's looking back,  
To see if I'm looking back,  
To see if she's looking back at me!

### T 11.8 In a clothes shop

SA = shop assistant C = customer

- SA Can I help you?  
C Yes, please. I'm looking for a shirt to go with my new suit.  
SA What colour are you looking for?  
C Blue.  
SA What about this one? Do you like this?  
C No, it isn't the right blue.  
SA Well, what about this one? It's a bit darker blue.  
C Oh yes. I like that one much better. Can I try it on?  
SA Yes, of course. The changing rooms are over there.  
Is the size OK?  
C No, it's a bit too big. Have you got a smaller size?  
SA That's the last blue one we've got, I'm afraid. But we've got it in white.  
C OK. I'll take the white. How much is it?  
SA £39.99. How do you want to pay?  
C Can I pay by credit card?  
SA Credit card's fine. Thank you very much.

## Unit 12

### T 12.1

#### Rosie

When I grow up I'm going to be a ballet dancer. I love dancing. I go dancing three times a week. I'm going to travel all over the world and I'm going to learn French and Russian because I want to dance in Paris and Moscow. I'm not going to marry until I'm thirty-five and then I'm going to have two children. First I'd like a girl and then a boy – but maybe I can't plan that! I'm going to work until I'm 75. I'm going to teach dancing and I'm going to open a dance school. It's all very exciting.

#### Miss Bishop

When I retire ... ? ... er ... well ... er ... two things. First, I'm going to learn Russian – I can already speak French and German, and I want to learn another language. And second, I'm going to learn to drive. It's terrible that I'm 59 and I can't drive – no time to learn. Then I'm going to buy a car and travel all over the world. Also I'm not going to wear boring clothes any more, I hate the skirts and blouses I wear every day for school. I'm going to wear jeans and T-shirts all the time. And when I return from my travels I'm going to write a book and go on TV to talk about it. I'm going to become a TV star!

### T 12.2 Listen and repeat

- A Is she going to be a ballet dancer?  
B Yes, she is.  
A What's she going to do?  
B Travel all over the world.

### T 12.3 Questions about Rosie

- 1 A Why is she going to learn French and Russian?  
B Because she wants to dance in Paris and Moscow.  
2 A When is she going to marry?  
B Not until she's thirty-five.  
3 A How many children is she going to have?  
B Two.  
4 A How long is she going to work?  
B Until she's seventy-five.  
5 A What is she going to teach?  
B Dancing.

### T 12.4 It's going to rain

- 1 Take an umbrella. It's going to rain.  
2 Look at the time! You're going to be late for the meeting.  
3 Anna's running very fast. She's going to win the race.  
4 Look! Jack's on the wall. He's going to fall.  
5 Look at that man! He's going to jump.  
6 They're going to have a baby. It's due next month.  
7 There's my sister and her boyfriend! Yuk! They're going to kiss.  
8 'Oh dear. I'm going to sneeze.  
Aaattishoo!'  
'Bless you!'

### T 12.5 Why are you going?

MB = Miss Bishop H = Harold

- MB First I'm going to Holland.  
H Why?  
MB To see the tulips, of course!  
H Oh yes! How wonderful! Where are you going after that?  
MB Well, then I'm going to Spain to watch flamenco dancing.

### T 12.6 The weather

- A What's the weather like today?  
B It's snowy and it's very cold.  
A What was it like yesterday?  
B Oh, it was cold and cloudy.  
A What's it going to be like tomorrow?  
B I think it's going to be warmer.

### T 12.7 Conversations about the weather

- 1 A It's a lovely day! What shall we do?  
B Let's play tennis!  
2 A It's raining again! What shall we do?  
B Let's stay at home and watch a video.

### T 12.8

- 1 A It's a lovely day! What shall we do?  
B Let's play tennis!  
A Oh no! It's too hot to play tennis.  
B Well, let's go to the beach.  
A OK. I'll get my swimming costume.

- 2 A It's raining again! What shall we do?  
B Let's stay at home and watch a video.  
A Oh no! We watched a video last night.  
B Well, let's go to the cinema.  
A OK. Which film do you want to see?

front door and went into the living room. Then they came upstairs to find me. 'It's all right now, sir,' they explained. 'We turned the television off for you!'

### T 13.4 see p102

### T 13.5 see p104

### T 13.6 Catching a train

Trains from Oxford to Bristol Temple Meads. Monday to Friday. Here are the departure times from Oxford and arrival times in Bristol.  
0816 arriving 0946  
0945 arriving 1114  
1040 arriving 1208  
11...

### T 13.7 The information bureau

- A = Ann B = clerk
- A Good morning. Can you tell me the times of trains from Bristol back to Oxford, please?  
B Afternoon, evening? When do you want to come back?  
A About five o'clock this afternoon.  
B About five o'clock. Right. Let's have a look. There's a train that leaves at 5.28, then there isn't another one until 6.50.  
A And what time do they get in?  
B The 5.28 gets into Oxford at 6.54 and the 6.50 gets in at 8.10.  
A Thanks a lot.

### T 13.8 At the ticket office

- A Hello. A return to Bristol, please.  
C Day return or period return?  
A A day return.  
C How do you want to pay?  
A Cash, please.  
C That's eighteen pounds.  
A Here's a twenty-pound note.  
C Here's your change and your ticket.  
A Thank you. Which platform is it?  
C You want platform 1 over there.  
A OK, thanks very much. Goodbye.

## Unit 14

### T 14.1 see p106

### T 14.2 see p106

### T 14.3 The life of Ryan

Yes, I've lived in a foreign country. In Japan, actually. I lived in Osaka for a year. I enjoyed it very much. I loved the food. And, yes, I have worked for a big company. I worked for Nissan, the car company, that's why I was in Japan. That was two years ago, then I got another job.

Have I stayed in an expensive hotel? No, never – only cheap hotels for me, I'm afraid, but I have flown in a jumbo jet – four or five times, actually. Oh, I've never cooked a meal

## Unit 13

### T 13.1 A general knowledge quiz

- 1 When did the first man walk on the moon?  
In 1969.  
2 Where are the Andes mountains?  
In South America.  
3 Who did Mother Teresa look after?  
Poor people in Calcutta.  
4 Who won the last World Cup?  
France in 1998.  
5 How many American states are there?  
50.  
6 How much does an African elephant weigh?  
5–7 tonnes.  
7 How far is it from London to New York?  
6,000 kilometres.  
8 How old was Princess Diana when she died?  
36.  
9 What languages do Swiss people speak?  
German, French, Italian, and Romansch.  
10 What did Marconi invent in 1901?  
The radio.  
11 What sort of music did Louis Armstrong play?  
Jazz.  
12 What happens at the end of *Romeo and Juliet*?  
Romeo and Juliet kill themselves.  
13 What happened in Europe in 1939?  
The Second World War started.  
14 Why do birds migrate?  
Because the winter is cold.  
15 Which was the first country to have TV?  
Britain.  
16 Which language has the most words?  
English.

### T 13.2 Listen carefully!

- 1 Why do you want to go?  
2 Who is she?  
3 Where's he staying?  
4 Why didn't they come?  
5 How old was she?  
6 Does he play the guitar?  
7 Where did you go at the weekend?

### T 13.3 Noises in the night

It was about 2 o'clock in the morning, and ... suddenly I woke up. I heard a noise. I got out of bed and went slowly downstairs. There was a light on in the living room. I listened carefully. I could hear two men speaking very quietly. 'Burglars!' I thought. 'Two burglars!' Immediately I ran back upstairs and phoned the police. I was really frightened. Fortunately the police arrived quickly. They opened the

for a lot of people. I love food but I don't like cooking, sometimes I cook for me and my girlfriend but she likes it better if we go out for a meal! And I've never met a famous person – oh, just a minute, well not met but I've seen ... er... I saw a famous politician at the airport once – Oh, who was it? I can't remember his name. Er ... I've only seen one Shakespeare play, when I was at school, we saw *Romeo and Juliet*. It was OK. I've driven a tractor though, I had a holiday job on a farm when I was 17. I enjoyed that. Good news – I've never been to hospital. I was born in hospital, of course, but that's different. Bad news – I've never won a competition. I do the lottery every week but I've never, ever won a thing!

#### T 14.4 A honeymoon in London

M = Marilyn J = Judy

- M We're having a great time!  
J Tell me about it! What have you done so far?  
M Well, we've been to Buckingham Palace. That was the first thing we did. It's right in the centre of London! We went inside and looked around.  
J Have you seen the Houses of Parliament yet?  
M Yeah, we have. We've just had a boat ride on the River Thames and we went right past the Houses of Parliament. We saw Big Ben! Then we went on the London Eye. That's the big wheel near Big Ben. That was this morning. This afternoon we're going to take a taxi to Hyde Park and then go shopping in Harrods. Tomorrow morning we're going to see the Crown Jewels in the Tower of London.  
J Wow! You're busy! And what about those big red buses? Have you travelled on a double-decker bus yet?  
M Oh, yeah we took one when we went to Buckingham Palace. We sat upstairs. You get a great view of the city.  
J Tomorrow's your last night. What are you going to do on your last night?  
M Well, we're going to the theatre, but we haven't decided what to see yet.  
J Oh, you're so lucky! Give my love to Rod!  
M Yeah. Bye, Judy. See you soon!

#### T 14.5 Leaving on a jet plane

My bags are packed, I'm ready to go  
I'm standing here outside your door,  
I hate to wake you up to say goodbye  
But the dawn is breaking,  
It's early morn'  
The taxi's waiting,  
He's blowing his horn.  
Already I'm so lonesome  
I could die.  
So kiss me and smile for me,  
Tell me that you'll wait for me,  
Hold me like you'll never let me go,  
'Cos I'm leaving on a jet plane,  
I don't know when I'll be back again.  
Oh babe, I hate to go.  
There's so many times I've let you down,  
So many times I've played around,  
I tell you now  
They don't mean a thing.  
Every place I go, I'll think of you  
Every song I sing, I'll sing for you  
When I come back  
I'll wear your wedding ring.

#### T 14.6 Flight information

British Airways flight BA 516 to Geneva boarding at gate 4, last call. Flight BA 516 to Geneva, last call. Scandinavian Airlines flight SK 832 to Frankfurt is delayed one hour. Flight SK 832 to Frankfurt, delayed one hour. Air France flight 472 to Amsterdam is now boarding at gate 17. Flight AF 472 to Amsterdam, now boarding, gate 17. Lufthansa flight 309 to Miami is now boarding at gate 32. Flight LH 309 to Miami, now boarding, gate 32. Virgin Airlines flight to New York, VS 876 to New York. Please wait in the departure lounge until a further announcement. Thank you. Passengers are reminded to keep their hand luggage with them at all times.

#### T 14.7 Conversations at the airport

- 1 A Listen! ... BA 516 to Geneva. That's our flight.  
B Did the announcement say gate 4 or 14?  
A I couldn't hear. I think it said 4.  
B Look! There it is on the departure board. It is gate 4.  
A OK. Come on! Let's go.
- 2 A Can I have your ticket, please?  
B Yes, of course.  
A Thank you. How many suitcases have you got?  
B Just one.  
A And have you got much hand luggage?  
B Just this bag.  
A That's fine.  
B Oh ... can I have a seat next to the window?  
A Yes, that's OK. Here's your boarding pass. Have a nice flight!
- 3 A Rod! Marilyn! Over here!  
B Hi! Judy! Great to see you!  
A It's great to see you too. You look terrific! Did you have a good honeymoon?  
B Fantastic. Everything was fantastic.  
A Well, you haven't missed anything here. Nothing much has happened at all!
- 4 A There's my flight. It's time to go.  
B Oh no! It's been a wonderful two weeks. I can't believe it's over.  
A I know. When can we see each other again?  
B Soon, I hope. I'll write every day.  
A I'll phone too. Goodbye.  
B Goodbye. Give my love to your family.

# Grammar Reference

## Unit 1

### 1.1 Verb to be

#### Positive

I	am	from the USA.
He	is	
She		
It		
We	are	

I'm = I am  
He's = He is  
She's = She is  
It's = It is  
We're = We are  
You're = You are  
They're = They are

#### Question

Where	am	I	from?
	is	he she it	
		we you they	
	are		

### I'm 20

I'm 20.  
I'm 20 years old. NOT I'm 20 years.  
I'm 20 years old. NOT I have 20 years.

### 1.2 Possessive adjectives

What's	my your his her its our your their	name?	What's = What is
This is		house.	

### 1.3 Question words

What is your phone number?  
Where are you from?  
How are you?

### 1.4 a/an

It's a	ticket. newspaper. magazine.
--------	------------------------------------

We use *an* before a vowel.

It's an	apple. envelope. English dictionary.
---------	--

I'm a doctor. NOT I'm doctor.  
I'm a student. NOT I'm student.

### 1.5 Plural nouns

1 Most nouns add -s in the plural.

stamps  
keys  
cameras

2 If the noun ends in -s, -ss, -sh, or -ch, add -es.

bus buses  
class classes  
wish wishes  
match matches

3 If the noun ends in a consonant + -y, the y changes to -ies.

country countries  
party parties

But if the noun ends in a vowel + -y, the -y doesn't change.

key keys  
day days

4 Some nouns are irregular. Dictionaries show this.

child children  
person people  
woman women  
man men

### 1.6 Numbers 1–20

- one
- two
- three
- four
- five
- six
- seven
- eight
- nine
- ten
- eleven
- twelve
- thirteen
- fourteen
- fifteen
- sixteen
- seventeen
- eighteen
- nineteen
- twenty

### 1.7 Prepositions

Where are you from?  
I live in a house in Toluca.  
What's this in English?

## Unit 2

### 2.1 Verb to be

#### Questions with question words

Answers	
What	is her surname? is his job? is her address?
Where	is she are you are they from?
Who	is Lara? is she?
How old	is he? are you?
How much	is an ice-cream?

#### Yes/No questions

Is	he she it	hot?
Are	you they	married?

#### Short answers

Yes, he is.  
No, she isn't.  
Yes, it is.  
  
No, I'm not./No, we aren't.  
Yes, they are./No, they aren't.

#### Negative

I	'm not	from the States.
He		
She	isn't	
It		
We	aren't	

I'm not = I am not (I amn't)  
He isn't = He is not  
She isn't = She is not  
It isn't = It is not  
  
We aren't = We are not  
You aren't = You are not  
They aren't = They are not

### 2.2 Possessive 's

My wife's name is Judy.  
That's Andrea's dictionary.

### 2.3 Numbers 21–100

- 21 twenty-one
- 22 twenty-two
- 23 twenty-three
- 24 twenty-four
- 25 twenty-five
- 26 twenty-six
- 27 twenty-seven
- 28 twenty-eight
- 29 twenty-nine
- 30 thirty
- 31 thirty-one
- 40 forty
- 50 fifty
- 60 sixty
- 70 seventy
- 80 eighty
- 90 ninety
- 100 one hundred

### 2.4 Prepositions

This is a photo **of** my family.  
It's good practice **for** you.

I'm **at** home. My mother and father are **at** work.  
I'm **at** La Guardia Community College.

I'm **in** New York. I'm **in** a class **with** eight other students.  
I live **in** an apartment **with** two American girls.  
Central Park is lovely **in** the snow.

## Unit 5

### 3.1 Present simple

#### Form

Subject	Verb	Present simple form
I	am	I am
He	is	He is
She	is	She is
It	is	It is
We	are	We are
You	are	You are
They	are	They are

#### Questions

Subject	Verb	Present simple form
I	am	I am
He	is	He is
She	is	She is
It	is	It is
We	are	We are
You	are	You are
They	are	They are

### 3.2 Present simple: regular verbs – present simple form

Present simple form	Present simple form
I am	He is
She is	It is
We are	You are
They are	

#### Positives

There is a book on the shelf.	There is a book on the shelf.
There are books on the shelf.	There are books on the shelf.
There is a pen in the pencil case.	There is a pen in the pencil case.
There are pens in the pencil case.	There are pens in the pencil case.

#### Negatives

There is not a book on the shelf.	There is not a book on the shelf.
There are not books on the shelf.	There are not books on the shelf.
There is not a pen in the pencil case.	There is not a pen in the pencil case.
There are not pens in the pencil case.	There are not pens in the pencil case.

# Unit 3

## 3.1 Present Simple *he, she, it*

- The Present Simple expresses a fact which is always true, or true for a long time.  
He **comes** from Switzerland.  
She **works** in a bank.
- It also expresses a habit.  
She **goes** skiing in winter.  
He never **has** a holiday.

### Positive

He		
She	lives	in Australia.
It		

Have is irregular. She **has** a dog. NOT she **haves**

### Negative

He		
She	doesn't live	in France.
It		

doesn't = does not

### Question

Where does	he she it	live?
------------	-----------------	-------

### Yes/No questions

Does	he she it	live	in Australia? in France?
------	-----------------	------	-----------------------------

### Short answers

Yes, he does.  
No, she doesn't.  
Yes, it does.

## 3.2 Spelling of the third person singular

- Most verbs add *-s* in the third person singular.

wear wears  
speak speaks  
live lives

But *go* and *do* are different. They add *-es*.

go goes  
do does

- If the verb ends in *-s*, *-sh*, or *-ch*, add *-es*.

finish finishes  
watch watches

- If the verb ends in a consonant + *-y*, the *y* changes to *-ies*.

fly flies  
study studies

But if the verb ends in a vowel + *-y* the *y* does not change.

play plays

- Have* is irregular.

have has

## 3.3 Prepositions

She lives **in** Switzerland.  
She goes skiing **in** her free time.  
**In** the evening we have supper.  
A nurse looks **after** people **in** hospital.  
She likes going **for** walks **in** summer.

Get **on** the bus.  
He lives **on** an island **in** the west of Scotland.

He collects the post **from** the boat.  
He delivers the beer **to** the pub.  
He drives the children **to** school.  
At ten we go **to** bed.  
He likes listening **to** music.  
He speaks **to** people **on** his radio.  
She's married **to** an American.

There's a letter **for** you.  
He makes breakfast **for** the guests.  
He writes **for** a newspaper.

He works **as** an undertaker.  
Tourists come **by** boat.  
It's **about** 6.30.

# Unit 4

## 4.1 Present Simple

### Positive

I		
You		
We		
They	start	at 6.30.
He		
She	starts	
It		

### Negative

I			
You	don't		
We		start	at 6.30.
They			
He	doesn't		
She			
It			

### Question

When	do	I you we they	start?
	does	he she it	

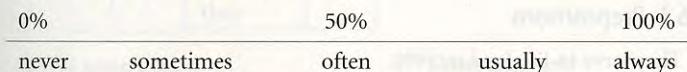
### Yes/No questions

Do	you they	have	a camera?
Does	he she it	like	Chinese food?

### Short answers

No, I don't./No, we don't.  
Yes, they do.  
Yes, he does.  
No, she doesn't.  
Yes, it does.

## 4.2 Adverbs of frequency



- These adverbs usually come before the main verb.  
I **usually** go to bed at about 11.00.  
I don't **often** go swimming.  
She **never** eats meat.  
We **always** have wine in the evenings.  
I **sometimes** play tennis on Saturdays.
- Sometimes* and *usually* can also come at the beginning or the end of a sentence.  
Sometimes we play cards      We play cards **sometimes**.  
Usually I walk to school.      I walk to school **usually**.
- Never and always can't come at the beginning or the end of a sentence.  
NOT Never I go to the theatre.  
Always I have tea in the morning.

## 4.3 like/love + verb + -ing

When *like* and *love* are followed by a verb, it is usually verb + *-ing*.  
I **like** cooking.  
She **loves** listening to music.  
They **like** sailing very much.

## 4.4 Prepositions

She gets up early **on** weekdays.  
He plays football **on** Friday mornings.  
They never go out **on** Friday evenings.  
Where do you go **on** holiday?  
He lives **on** the next block.  
He hates watching football **on** television.  
Do you relax **at** weekends?  
She gets up **at** six o'clock.  
She gets up early **in** the morning.  
We go out **in** the evening.  
He takes photos **in** (the) spring.

# Unit 5

## 5.1 There is/are

### Positive

There	is	a sofa.	(singular)
	are	two books.	(plural)

### Negative

There	isn't	an armchair.	(singular)
	aren't	any flowers.	(plural)

### Yes/No questions

Is		a table?	Short answers
	there		Yes, there is. No, there isn't.
Are		any photos?	Yes, there are. No, there aren't.

## 5.2 How many ... ?

How many books do you have?

## 5.3 some/any

### Positive

There are **some** flowers.      *some* + plural noun

### Negative

There aren't **any** cups.      *any* + plural noun

### Question

Are there **any** books?      *any* + plural noun

## 5.4 *this, that, these, those*

We use *this* and *these* to talk about people/things that are near to us.

I like **this** ice-cream.

I want **these** shoes.

We use *that* and *those* to talk about people/things that aren't near to us.

Do you like **that** picture on the wall?

Who are **those** children outside?

## 5.5 Prepositions

It's the best home **in** the world.

The front door is **at** the top of the steps.

There are magazines **under** the table.

There is a photo **on** the television.

There are two pictures **on** the wall.

The cinema is **on** the left, **opposite** the flower shop.

The bank is **next to** the supermarket.

The bus stop is **near** the park.

There is a post box **in front** of the chemist's.

# Unit 6

## 6.1 *can/can't*

*Can* and *can't* have the same form in all persons.

There is no *do* or *does*.

*Can* is followed by the infinitive (without *to*).

## could/couldn't

*Could* is the past of *can*. *Could* and *couldn't* have the same form in all persons.

*Could* is followed by the infinitive (without *to*).

### Positive

I He/She/It We You They	can could	swim.
-------------------------------------	--------------	-------

### Negative

I He/She/It We You They	can't couldn't	dance.
-------------------------------------	-------------------	--------

NOT He ~~doesn't can~~ dance.

### Question

What	can could	I you he/she/it we they	do?
------	--------------	-------------------------------------	-----

### Yes/No questions

Can Could	you she they	drive? cook?
--------------	--------------------	-----------------

NOT ~~Do you can~~ drive?

### Short answers

No, I can't./No, we couldn't.  
Yes, she can/could.  
Yes, they can/could.

## 6.2 *was/were*

*Was/were* is the past of *am/is/are*.

### Positive

I He/She/It	was	in Paris yesterday.
We You They	were	in England last year.

### Negative

I He/She/It	wasn't	at school yesterday.
We You They	weren't	at the party last night.

### Question

Where	was	I? he/she/it?
	were	we? you? they?

### Yes/No questions

Was	he she	at work?
Were	you they	at home?

### Short answers

No, he wasn't.  
Yes, she was.

Yes, I was./Yes, we were.  
No, they weren't.

## was born

Where	was	she he	born?
	were	you they	

I **was born** in Manchester in 1980. NOT ~~I am born~~ in 1980.

## 6.3 Prepositions

They were **in** England in 1998.

I was **at** a party.

Yesterday there was a party **at** my house.

Can I speak **to** you?

She sells pictures **for** \$10,000.

She paints **for** two hours **until** bedtime.

## Unit 7

### 7.1 Past Simple – spelling of regular verbs

1 The normal rule is to add *-ed*.

worked      started

If the verb ends in *-e*, add *-d*.

lived      loved

2 If the verb has only one syllable and one vowel and one consonant, double the consonant.

stopped      planned

3 Verbs that end in a consonant + *-y* change to *-ied*.

studied      carried

### 7.2 Past Simple

The Past Simple expresses a past action that is finished.

I lived in Rome when I was 6.

She started work when she was 8.

The form of the Past Simple is the same in all persons.

#### Positive

I He/She/It We You They	moved went	to London in 1985.
-------------------------------------	---------------	--------------------

#### Negative

We use *didn't* + infinitive (without *to*) in all persons.

I He/She/It We You They	didn't	move go	to London.
-------------------------------------	--------	------------	------------

#### Question

We use *did* + infinitive (without *to*) in all persons.

When Where	did	I you he/she/it we they	go?
---------------	-----	-------------------------------------	-----

#### Yes/No questions

Did	you she they etc.	like enjoy	the film? the party?
-----	----------------------------	---------------	-------------------------

There is a list of irregular verbs on p142.

### 7.3 Time expressions

last	night Saturday week month year
yesterday	morning afternoon evening

### 7.4 Prepositions

She thinks **about** her past life.

She died **in** a car crash.

He was tired **of** politics.

People were afraid **of** her.

Politics was the love **of** her life.

Who is the card **from**?

She worked **from** 6.00 **until** 10.00.

## Unit 8

### 8.1 Past Simple

#### Negative

Negatives in the Past Simple are the same in all persons.

I He/She We You They	didn't	go out see Tom watch TV	last night.
----------------------------------	--------	-------------------------------	-------------

#### ago

I went to the USA	ten years two weeks a month	ago.
-------------------	-----------------------------------	------

### 8.2 Time expressions

in	the twentieth century 1924 the 1990s winter/summer the evening/the morning September
on	10 October Christmas Day Saturday Sunday evening
at	seven o'clock weekends night

### 8.3 Prepositions

What's **on** television this evening?

I'm **on** a mobile phone.

We spoke for an hour **on** the phone.

Some people try to find love **on** the internet.

We didn't laugh **at** his joke.

There was a knock **at** the door.

Today's the third **of** April.

# Unit 9

## 9.1 Count and uncount nouns

Some nouns are countable.

a book two books  
an egg six eggs

Some nouns are uncountable.

bread rice

Some nouns are both!

Do you like ice-cream?  
We'd like three ice-creams, please.

## 9.2 would like

*Would* is the same in all persons. We use *would like* in offers and requests.

### Positive

I		
You		
He/She/It	'd like	a drink.
We		
They		

'd = would

### Yes/No questions

Would	you he/she/it they	like a biscuit?
-------	--------------------------	-----------------

### Short answers

Yes, please.  
No, thank you.

## 9.3 some and any

We use *some* in positive sentences with uncountable nouns and plural nouns.

There is	some	bread	on the table.
There are		oranges	

We use *some* in questions when we ask for things and offer things.

Can I have	some	coffee, please?	(I know there is some coffee.)
Would you like		grapes?	(I know there are some grapes.)

We use *any* in questions and negative sentences with uncountable nouns and plural nouns.

Is there	water?	(I don't know if there is any water.)
Does she have	children?	(I don't know if she has any children.)
I can't see	rice.	
There aren't	people.	

## 9.4 How much ...? and How many ...?

We use *How much ...?* with uncount nouns.

**How much** rice is there?

There isn't much rice.

We use *How many ...?* with count nouns.

**How many** apples are there?

There aren't many apples.

## 9.5 Prepositions

I've got a book **by** John Grisham.

Help me **with** my homework.

# Unit 10

## 10.1 Comparative and superlative adjectives

	Adjective	Comparative	Superlative
One-syllable adjectives	old safe big hot	older safer bigger hotter	the oldest the safest the biggest* the hottest*
Adjectives ending in -y	noisy dirty	noisier dirtier	the noisiest the dirtiest
Adjectives with two or more syllables	boring beautiful	more boring more beautiful	the most boring the most beautiful
Irregular adjectives	good bad far	better worse further	the best the worst the furthest

\* Adjectives which end in one vowel and one consonant double the consonant.

You're **older** than me.

New York is **dirtier** than Paris.

Prague is one of the **most beautiful** cities in Europe.

## 10.2 have got and have

*Have got* means the same as *have* to talk about possession, but the form is very different. We often use *have got* in spoken English.

### have got

#### Positive

I You We They	have	got	a cat. a garden.
He She It	has		

#### Negative

I You We They	haven't	got	a dog. a garage.
He She It	hasn't		

#### Questions

Have	I you we they	got	any money? a sister?
Has	he she it		

How many children **have they got?**

#### Short answers

Yes, I have./No, I haven't.

Yes, she has./No, she hasn't.

The past of both *have* and *have got* is *had*.

### have

#### Positive

I You We They	have	a cat. a garden.
He She It	has	

#### Negative

I You We They	don't	have	a dog. a garage.
He She It	doesn't		

#### Questions

Do	I you we they	have	any money? a sister?
Does	he she it		

How many children **do they have?**

#### Short answers

Yes, I do./No, I don't.

Yes, she does./No, she doesn't.

## 10.3 Prepositions

The country is quieter **than** the city.

The house is 50 metres **from** the sea.

Everest is the highest mountain **in** the world.

He spends his time **on** the banks of the river.

She came **out of** the garage.

He drove **along** the road.

They ran **over** the bridge.

I walked **past** the pub.

He walked **up** the hill.

He ran **down** the hill.

The boat went **across** the river.

The cat ran **through** the hedge.

He jumped **into** the lake.

# Unit 11

## 11.1 Present Continuous

- The Present Continuous describes an activity happening now.  
She's **wearing** jeans.  
I'm **studying** English.
- It also describes an activity in the near future.  
I'm **playing** tennis this afternoon.  
Jane's **seeing** her boyfriend tonight.

### Positive and Negative

I	am		
He			
She	is	(not) going	outside.
It			
We			
You	are		
They			

### Question

Where	am	I	going?
	is	he/she/it	
	are	we you they	

### Yes/No questions

- Are you having a good time?  
Is my English getting better?  
Are they having a party?

### Short answers

- Yes, we are.  
Yes, it is.  
No, they aren't.

## Spelling of verb + -ing

- Most verbs just add **-ing**.

wear	wearing
go	going
cook	cooking
hold	holding

- If the infinitive ends in **-e**, drop the **-e**.

write	writing
smile	smiling
take	taking

- When a one-syllable verb has one vowel and ends in a consonant, double the consonant.

sit	sitting
get	getting
run	running

## 11.2 Present Simple and Present Continuous

- The Present Simple describes things that are always true, or true for a long time.

I **come** from Switzerland.  
He **works** in a bank.

- The Present Continuous describes activities happening now, and temporary activities.

Why **are you wearing** a suit? You usually wear jeans.

## 11.3 Whose + possessive pronouns

**Whose ... ?** asks about possession.

Subject	Object	Adjective	Pronoun
I	me	my	mine
You	you	your	yours
He	him	his	his
She	her	her	hers
We	us	our	ours
They	them	their	theirs

Whose is this book? Whose book is this? Whose is it?	It's	mine. yours. hers. his. ours. theirs.
--	------	--

## 11.4 Prepositions

- I read **in** bed.  
We've got this jumper **in** red.  
He's talking **to** Mandy.  
There's a girl **with** fair hair.  
I'm looking **for** a jumper.  
I always pay **by** credit card.

## Unit 12

### 12.1 going to

- Going to expresses a person's plans and intentions.  
She's **going to** be a ballet dancer when she grows up.  
We're **going to** stay in a villa in France this summer.
- Often there is no difference between *going to* and the Present Continuous to refer to a future intention.  
I'm **seeing** Peter tonight.  
I'm **going to see** Peter tonight.
- We also use *going to* when we can see now that something is sure to happen in the future.  
Careful! That glass is **going to** fall!

#### Positive and negative

I	am	(not) going to	have a break. stay at home.
He/She/It	is		
We			
You They	are		

#### Question

When	am	I	going to	have a break? stay at home?
	is	he/she/it		
		we		
	are	you they		

With the verbs *to go* and *to come*, we usually use the Present Continuous for future plans.

We're **going to** Paris next week.

Joe and Tim **are coming** for lunch tomorrow.

### 12.2 Infinitive of purpose

The infinitive can express why a person does something.

I'm saving my money **to buy** a CD player.

(= because I want to buy a CD player)

We're going to Paris **to have** a holiday.

(= because we want to have a holiday)

NOT

I'm saving my money **for to buy** a CD player.

I'm saving my money **for buy** a CD player.

### 12.3 Prepositions

I'm going to Florida **in** a year's time.

He's interested **in** flying.

She's good **at** singing.

She was afraid **of** cars.

What's the weather **like**?

What's **on** TV tonight?

There's a film **on** Channel 4.

What's **on** at the cinema?

## Unit 13

### 13.1 Question forms

When did Columbus discover America?

Where are the Andes?

Who did she marry?

Who was Mother Teresa?

How do you get to school?

What do you have for breakfast?

What happens at the end of the story?

Why do you want to learn English?

How many people are there in the class?

How much does she earn?

How far is it to the centre?

What sort of car do you have?

Which newspaper do you read?

### 13.2 Adjectives and adverbs

Adjectives describe nouns.

a **big** dog

a **careful** driver

Adverbs describe verbs.

She ran **quickly**.

He drives too **fast**.

To form regular adverbs, add *-ly* to the adjective.

Words ending in *-y* change to *-ily*.

Adjective	Adverb
quick	quickly
bad	badly
careful	carefully
immediate	immediately
easy	easily

Some adverbs are irregular.

Adjective	Adverb
good	well
hard	hard
early	early
fast	fast

### 13.3 Prepositions

What's the story **about**?

What happens **at** the end of the story?

The train leaves **from** platform 9.

# Unit 14

## 14.1 Present Perfect

- The Present Perfect refers to an action that happened some time before now.  
She's **travelled** to most parts of the world.  
**Have you ever been** in a car accident?
- If we want to say *when* these actions happened, we must use the Past Simple.  
She **went** to Russia two years ago.  
I **was** in a crash when I was 10.
- Notice the time expressions used with the Past Simple.

I left	last night. yesterday. in 1990. at three o'clock. on Monday.
--------	--

### Positive and negative

I You We They	have	(not) been	to the States.
He She It	has		

I've been = I have been  
You've been = You have been  
We've been = We have been  
They've been = They have been

He's been = He has been  
She's been = She has been  
It's been = It has been

### Question

Where	have	I you we they	been?
	has	she he it	

### Yes/No questions

Have you been to Russia?

### Short answers

Yes, I have.  
No, I haven't.

### ever and never

We use *ever* in questions and *never* in negative sentences.

Have you **ever** been to Russia?

I've **never** been to Russia.

## 14.2 yet and just

We use *just* in positive sentences. We use *yet* in negative sentences and questions.

Have you done your homework **yet**?

I haven't done it **yet** (but I'm going to).

I have **just** done it (a short time before now).

## 14.3 been and gone

She's **gone** to Portugal (and she's there now).

She's **been** to Portugal (sometime in her life, but now she has returned).

## 14.4 Prepositions

She works **for** a big company.

Hamlet is a play **by** Shakespeare.

Brad and Marilyn are **on** honeymoon

Wait **for** me!

# Word list

Here is a list of most of the new words in the units of New Headway Elementary.

*adj* = adjective  
*adv* = adverb  
*conj* = conjunction  
*opp* = opposite  
*pl* = plural  
*prep* = preposition  
*pron* = pronoun  
*pp* = past participle  
*n* = noun  
*v* = verb  
*infml* = informal  
US = American English

## Unit 1

apple *n* /'æpl/  
bag *n* /baɡ/  
because *conj* /bi'kɒz/  
Brazil *n* /bra'zil/  
brother *n* /'brʌðə/  
camera *n* /'kæmərə/  
children *n pl* /'tʃɪldrən/  
cinema *n* /'sinemə/  
country *n* /'kʌntri/  
day *n* /deɪ/  
dictionary *n* /'dɪkʃənri/  
doctor *n* /'dɒktə/  
Egypt *n* /'i:dʒɪpt/  
England *n* /'ɪŋglənd/  
evening *n* /'i:vniŋ/  
extension *n* /ɪk'stenʃən/  
fine *adj* /fain/  
flat *n* /flæt/  
France *n* /fra:nſ/  
from *prep* /frɒm/  
Germany *n* /'dʒɜːməni/  
goodbye */gʊd'baɪ/*  
have *v* /haev/  
hello /hə'ləʊ/  
her *pron* /hɜː/  
house *n* /haus/  
Hungary *n* /'hʌŋgəri/  
international *adj* /,ɪntə'næʃnəl/  
Italy *n* /'ɪtəli/  
Japan *n* /dʒə'pæn/  
job *n* /dʒɒb/  
key *n* /ki:/  
language *n* /'læŋgwɪdʒ/  
learn *v* /lɜːn/  
letter *n* /'letə/  
live *v* /lɪv/  
magazine *n* /mæɡə'zi:n/  
married *adj* /'mærɪd/  
me *pron* /mi:/  
Mexico *n* /'meksɪkəʊ/  
my *pron* /maɪ/  
name *n* /neɪm/  
newspaper *n* /'njuːspeɪpə/  
nice *adj* /naɪs/  
not bad *adj infml* /,nɒt 'bæd/  
orange *n* /'ɔːrɪndʒ/  
postcard *n* /'pəʊskɑːd/  
Russia *n* /'rʌʃə/  
see you *v infml* /'si: ju:/  
sister *n* /'sistə/  
Spain *n* /speɪn/  
stamp *n* /stæmp/  
student *n* /'stju:dənt/

teacher *n* /'ti:tʃə/  
telephone number *n* /'telfənəmə/  
thank you /'θæŋk ju:/  
thanks /θæŋks/  
the USA *n* /ðə ju:es'eɪ/  
this (book) /ðɪs/  
ticket *n* /'tɪkɪt/  
want *v* /wɒnt/  
where *adv* /weə/  
your *pron* /jɔ:/

## Unit 2

accountant *n* /ə'kaʊntənt/  
address *n* /ə'dres/  
age *n* /eɪdʒ/  
American *adj* /ə'merɪkən/  
anything else /'enɪθɪŋ 'els/  
apartment *n* /ə'pa:tment/  
Argentina *n* /a:dʒən'ti:nə/  
at home /ət 'həʊm/  
aunt *n* /a:nt/  
big *adj* /big/  
boyfriend *n* /'boɪfrend/  
brother *n* /'brʌðə/  
cake *n* /keɪk/  
Can I have ...? /,kæn aɪ 'hæv/  
Can I help? /,kæn aɪ 'help/  
cheap *adj* /tʃi:p/  
chicken *n* /'tʃɪkɪn/  
chips *n pl* /tʃɪps/  
chocolate *n* /'tʃɒklət/  
coffee *n* /'kɒfɪ/  
coffee bar *n* /'kɒfɪ\_,ba:/  
cold *adj* /kəʊld/  
college *n* /'kɒlɪdʒ/  
dancer *n* /'da:nsə/  
daughter *n* /'do:tə/  
different *adj* /'dɪfrənt/  
difficult *adj* /'dɪfɪkəlt/  
drink *v* /drɪŋk/  
easy *adj* /'i:zi/  
egg *n* /eg/  
exciting *adj* /ɪk'saitɪŋ/  
expensive *adj* /ɪk'spensɪv/  
fast *adj* /fa:st/  
father *n* /'fa:ðə/  
first name *n* /'fɜːst neɪm/  
French *adj* /frentʃ/  
friendly *adj* /'frendli/  
girl *n* /gɜːl/  
girlfriend *n* /'gɜːlfrend/  
good *adj* /gʊd/  
grandfather *n* /'grænfa:ðə/  
grandmother *n* /'grænmʌðə/  
hamburger *n* /'hæmbə:gə/  
happy *adj* /'hæpi/  
here *adv* /hɪə/  
here you are /'hɪə ju: ,a:/  
hi /haɪ/  
holiday *n* /'holɪdeɪ/  
horrible *adj* /'hɒrəbl/  
hot *adj* /hɒt/  
how much? *adv* /,hau 'mʌtʃ/  
how old? *adv* /,hau 'əuld/  
husband *n* /'hʌzbənd/  
ice-cream *n* /'aɪskri:m/  
identity card *n* /'aɪdəntɪtɪ ,ka:d/  
Ireland *n* /'ɪrlənd/  
journalist *n* /'dʒɜːsnəlist/  
love *n* /lʌv/  
lovely *adj* /'lʌvli/  
menu *n* /'menju:/  
mineral water *n* /'mɪnərəl ,wo:tə/  
morning *n* /'mɔːnɪŋ/  
mother *n* /'mʌðə/  
new *adj* /nju:/  
now *adv* /naʊ/  
nurse *n* /nɜːs/  
old *adj* /əʊld/  
orange juice *n* /'ɔːrɪndʒ ,dʒu:s/  
pardon? /'pa:dn/  
photo *n* /'fəʊtəo/  
pizza *n* /'pi:tsə/  
please /pli:z/  
Poland *n* /'pəʊlənd/  
policeman *n* /pə'li:smən/  
pound *n* /paʊnd/  
practice *n* /'præktaɪs/  
price *n* /praɪs/  
salad *n* /'sæləd/  
slow *adj* /sləʊ/  
small *adj* /smɔːl/  
snack bar *n* /'snæk ,ba:/  
snow *n, v* /snəʊ/  
son *n* /sən/  
soon *adv* /su:n/  
speak *v* /spi:k/  
subway *n US* /'sʌbwei/  
surname *n* /'sɜːneɪm/  
Switzerland *n* /'swɪtsələnd/  
tea *n* /ti:/  
tuna *n* /'tju:nə/  
uncle *n* /'ʌŋkl/  
understand *v* /ʌndə'stænd/  
use *v* /ju:z/  
who? *pron* /hu:/  
wife *n* /waɪf/  
write *v* /raɪt/  
young *adj* /jʌŋ/

## Unit 3

a little *adj* /ə 'lɪtl/  
afternoon *n* /,a:ftə'nu:n/  
ambulance *n* /'æmbju:ləns/  
architect *n* /'a:kɪkt/  
Australia *n* /ɒ'streɪliə/  
barman *n* /'ba:mən/  
be quiet *v* /bi: 'kwaɪət/  
beer *n* /bɪə/  
before *prep* /bɪ'fɔ:/  
biology *n* /'baɪ'ɒlədʒi/  
boat *n* /bəʊt/  
breakfast *n* /'brekfəst/  
busy *adj* /'bɪzɪ/  
but *conj* /bʌt/, /bət/  
centre *n* /'sentə/  
city *n* /'sɪti/  
clock *n* /klɒk/  
collect *v* /kə'lekt/  
come *v* /kʌm/  
day *n* /deɪ/  
deliver *v* /drɪ'ver/  
design *v* /dr'zaim/  
do the accounts *v*  
/du: ði: ə'kaʊnts/  
dog *n* /dɒg/  
drive *n* /draɪv/  
end *n* /end/  
every day *adv* /'evrɪ 'deɪ/  
Excuse me /ɪk'skjuz: 'mi:/  
fireman *n* /'faɪəmən/  
fly *v* /flaɪ/  
flying doctor *n* /'flaɪɪŋ 'dɒktə/  
football *n* /'fʊtbɔ:l/  
free time *n* /fri: 'taɪm/  
German *adj* /dʒɜ:mən/  
get up *v* /get 'ʌp/  
glass *n* /glɑ:s/  
go *v* /gəʊ/  
go to bed *v* /,gəʊ tə 'bed/  
guest *n* /gest/  
help *v* /help/  
hospital *n* /'hɒspɪtl/  
house *n* /haʊs/  
How's (Ann)? *adv* /haʊz/  
hurry up *v* /hʌri 'ʌp/  
interpreter *n* /m'tɜ:prɪtə/  
island *n* /'aɪlənd/  
language *n* /'læŋgwɪdʒ/  
late *adj* /leɪt/  
like *v* /laɪk/  
listen *v* /'lisən/  
look after *v* /lʊk 'a:ftə/  
love *v* /lʌv/  
make *v* /meɪk/  
man *n* /mæn/  
money *n* /'mʌni/  
music *n* /'mju:zɪk/  
never *adv* /'nevə/  
non-stop *adv* /'nɒn 'stɒp/  
north *n* /nɔ:θ/  
office *n* /'ɒfɪs/  
only *adj* /'əʊnlɪ/  
ordinary *adj* /'ɔ:dənri/

## Unit 4

people *n pl* /'pi:pl/  
perhaps *adv* /pə'hæps/  
petrol *n* /'petrəl/  
pilot *n* /'paɪəlt/  
plane *n* /pleɪn/  
play *v* /pleɪ/  
post *n* /pəʊst/  
postman *n* /'pəʊsmən/  
pub *n* /pʌb/  
radio *n* /'reɪdiəʊ/  
school *n* /sku:l/  
scientist *n* /'saɪəntɪst/  
sell *v* /sel/  
serve *v* /sɜ:v/  
shop *n* /ʃɒp/  
shopkeeper *n* /'ʃɒpki:pə/  
sick *adj* /sɪk/  
sit down *v* /,sit 'daʊn/  
skiing *n* /skiɪŋ/  
small *adj* /smɔ:l/  
speak *v* /spi:k/  
summer *n* /'sʌmə/  
supper *n* /'sʌpə/  
taxi driver *n* /'tæksi ,draɪvə/  
television *n* /'teləvɪʒn/  
tennis *n* /'tenɪs/  
that's right /,ðæts 'raɪt/  
there *adv* /ðeə/  
thing *n* /θɪŋ/  
tired *adj* /'taɪəd/  
too *adv* /tu:/  
tourist *n* /'tʊərɪst/  
town *n* /taʊn/  
translate *v* /træn'zleɪt/  
undertaker *n* /'ʌndəteɪkə/  
vanilla *adj* /və'nɪlə/  
walk *n, v* /wɔ:k/  
watch *n, v* /wɒtʃ/  
week *n* /wi:k/  
weekday *n* /'wi:kdeɪ/  
wine *n* /waɪn/  
winter *n* /'wɪntə/  
work *v* /wɜ:k/  
world *n* /wɜ:ld/  
  
a lot *pron* /ə 'lɒt/  
after *adv* /'a:ftə/  
always *adv* /ə:lwəz/  
Autumn *n* /'ə:təmən/  
bad *adj* /bæd/  
bar *n* /ba:/  
baseball *n* /'beɪsbɔ:l/  
beach *n* /bi:tʃ/  
block *n* /blɒk/  
boring *adj* /'bɔ:rɪŋ/  
brown *adj* /braʊn/  
bus *n* /bʌs/  
buy *v* /baɪ/  
called *pp* /kə:ld/  
car *n* /ka:/  
chat *v* /tʃæt/  
Chinese *adj* /tʃaɪ'ni:z/  
colour *n* /'kʌlə/  
come *v* /kʌm/  
computer *n* /kəm'pju:tə/  
computer game *n*  
/kəm'pju:tə geɪm/  
cook *v* /kʊk/  
dance *v* /da:ns/  
different *adj* /dɪfrənt/  
dinner *n* /'dɪnə/  
do *v* /du:/  
domestic *adj* /də'mestɪk/  
don't worry *v* /,dəʊnt 'wʌri/  
early *adj* /'ɜ:li/  
especially *adv* /ɪ'speʃəli/  
every day *adv* /'evrɪ 'deɪ/  
Excuse me /ɪk'skjuz: 'mi:/  
export department *n*  
/'ekspo:t dɪ,pa:tment/  
exposure *n* /ik'spəʊzə/  
fall (= autumn) *n* US /fɔ:l/  
family *n* /'fæməli/  
famous *adj* /'feməs/  
fantastic *adj* /fæn'tæstɪk/  
favourite *adj* /'feɪvrit/  
film *n* /fɪlm/  
flower *n* /'flaʊə/  
food *n* /fu:d/  
fortunately *adv* /'fɔ:tʃənətlɪ/  
friend *n* /frend/  
go out *v* /,gəʊ 'aʊt/  
gold *adj* /gəuld/  
grey *adj* /greɪ/  
gym *n* /dʒɪm/  
headquarters *n pl* /,hed'kwa:təz/  
here *adv* /hɪə/  
hobby *n* /'hɒbi/  
hour *n* /aʊə/  
how? *adv* /haʊ/  
I'm sorry /,aim 'sɒri/  
ice hockey *n* /'ais ,hɒki/  
ice-skating *n* /'ais ,sketɪŋ/  
interesting *adj* /'ɪntrəstɪŋ/  
interview *n* /'ɪntəvju:/  
it doesn't matter /ɪt 'dəznt 'mætə/  
jogging *n* /'dʒɒgɪŋ/  
kid *n* /kɪd/  
  
lake *n* /leɪk/  
learn *v* /lɜ:n/  
leisure activity *n*  
/leɪzə(r) ə'k'tɪvɪtɪ/  
long *adj* /lɒŋ/  
make *v* /meɪk/  
meet *v* /mi:t/  
near *adv* /nɪə/  
never *adv* /'nevə/  
news programme *n*  
/'nju:z ,prəʊgræm/  
next *adj* /nekst/  
of course /əv 'kɔ:s/  
often *adv* /'ɒftən/, /'ɒftən/  
only *adj* /'əʊnlɪ/  
open *v* /'əʊpən/  
pardon? /'pa:dn/  
parents *n pl* /'peərənts/  
pop song *n* /'pɒp sɒŋ/  
Portugal *n* /'po:tʃʊgl/  
reading *n* /'ri:dɪŋ/  
really? /'riəli/  
red *adj* /red/  
relax *v* /rɪ'læks/  
sailing *n* /'seɪlnɪŋ/  
say *v* /sei/  
season *n* /'si:zn/  
short *adj* /ʃɔ:t/  
shy *adj* /ʃaɪ/  
smoke *v* /smo:k/  
sometimes *adv* /'sʌmtaɪmz/  
special *adj* /'speʃl/  
Spring *n* /sprɪŋ/  
start *v* /sta:t/  
suddenly *adv* /'sʌdnɪl/  
sunbathing *n* /'sʌnbɛθɪŋ/  
sunny *adj* /'sʌni/  
swimming *n* /'swɪmɪŋ/  
take *v* /teɪk/  
take photos *v* /'terk 'fəʊtəʊz/  
That's OK /'ðæts əʊ,keɪ/  
then *adv* /ðen/  
traffic *n* /'træfɪk/  
tree *n* /tri:/  
usually *adj* /'ju:ʒəli/  
visit *v* /'vɪzɪt/  
warm *adj* /wɔ:m/  
weekend *n* /'wi:kend/  
wet *adj* /wet/  
What does ... mean?  
/wɒt dəz ... mi:n/  
what time? /wɒt 'taɪm/  
what? /wɒt/  
when? /wen/  
where? /weə/  
why? /waɪ/  
window *n* /'windəu/  
year *n* /jɪə/  
yellow *adj* /'jeləu/

## Unit 5

address book *n* /ə'dres ,buk/  
air conditioning *n*  
/eə kən,dɪʃnɪŋ/  
alone *adj* /ə'ləʊn/  
armchair *n* /'a:m'tʃeə/  
at the moment *adv*  
/æt ðə 'məʊmənt/  
bank *n* /bæŋk/  
bathroom *n* /'ba:θrəm/  
beautiful *adj* /'bjut:tfl/  
bedroom *n* /'bedrəm/  
best *adj* /best/  
blinds *n pl* /blaɪndz/  
bookshelf *n* /'bok'self/  
both /bəʊθ/  
briefcase *n* /'bri:fkeɪs/  
bus ticket *n* /'bʌs ,tɪkt/  
cat *n* /kæt/  
CD *n* /si:/ 'di:/  
champagne *n* /ʃæm'peɪn/  
Cheers! /tʃiəz/  
chemist('s) *n* /'kemist(s)/  
clock *n* /klɒk/  
cockpit *n* /'kɒkpit/  
coffee table *n* /'kɒfi ,teɪbl/  
comfortable *adj* /'kʌmftəbl/  
cooker *n* /'ku:kə/  
cup *n* /kʌp/  
cupboard *n* /'kʌbəd/  
dishwasher *n* /dɪʃwɔ:sə/  
door *n* /dɔ:/  
downstairs *adv* /daʊn'steəz/  
emergency exit *n*  
/ɪ'mɜ:dʒənsi ,eksɪt/  
everything *pron* /'evrɪθɪŋ/  
exactly *adv* /ɪg'zæktlɪ/  
ex-wife *n* /'eks'waɪf/  
famous *adj* /'feɪməs/  
fantastic *adj* /fæn'tæstɪk/  
far *adv* /fa:/  
film star *n* /'film ,sta:/  
fire *n* /faɪə/  
first /fɜ:st/  
first class *adj* /'fɜ:st 'kla:s/  
flat *n* /flæt/  
flight attendant *n*  
/'flaɪt ə tendənt/  
floor *n* /flo:/  
fork *n* /fɔ:k/  
fridge *n* /frɪdʒ/  
front door *n* /frʌnt 'dɔ:/  
garden *n* /'ga:dn/  
grandma *n* /'grænma:/  
how many? /'haʊ 'meni/  
just (= only) *adv* /dʒʌst/  
key *n* /ki:/  
kitchen *n* /'kitʃɪn/  
knife *n* /naif/  
lady *n* /'leɪdi/  
lamp *n* /læmp/  
left *adv* (opp right) /left/  
living room *n* /'livɪŋ ,rom/  
lots (of books) /lɒts/  
luxury *n* /'lʌkʃəri/

mirror *n* /'mɪrə/  
mobile phone *n* /'məʊbɔɪl 'fəʊn/  
modern *adj* /'mɒdn/  
most of the time  
/məʊst əv ðə taim/  
neighbour *n* /'neɪbə/  
newsagent('s) *n* /'nju:zeɪdʒənt(s)/  
notebook *n* /'nəʊtbʊk/  
open *v* /'əpən/  
over there /,əvər ðeə/  
park *n* /pa:k/  
party *n* /'pa:ti/  
passport *n* /'pa:sɒ:p:t/  
pen *n* /pen/  
picture *n* /'pɪktʃə/  
plane *n* /pleɪn/  
plant *n* /pla:nt/  
plate *n* /pleɪt/  
quite (big) *adv* /kwait/  
rain *v* /rem/  
rich *adj* /ritʃ/  
right *adv* (opp left) /raɪt/  
room *n* /rom/, /ru:m/  
rug *n* /rʌg/  
sandwich *n* /'sænwɪdʒ/  
second /'sekənd/  
section *n* /'sekʃn/  
shelf *n* /ʃelf/  
shop *n* /ʃɒp/  
sofa *n* /'səʊfə/  
spoon *n* /spu:n/  
stop (bus) *n* /stɒp/  
steps *n* /steɪps/  
stereo *n* /'steriə/  
supermarket *n* /su:pə,ma:kɪt/  
swimming pool *n* /'swimɪŋ ,pu:l/  
thanks a lot /'θæŋks ə ,lɒt/  
toilet *n* /'tɔɪlət/  
top *n* /tɒp/  
upstairs *adv* /,ʌp'steəz/  
wall *n* /wɔ:l/  
washing machine *n*  
/wɔʃɪŋ mə,ʃi:n/

## Unit 6

bedtime *n* /'bedtaɪm/  
between *prep* /bi'twi:n/  
bike *n* /baɪk/  
brilliant *adj* /'brɪliənt/  
can't stop *v* /'ka:nt 'stɒp/  
Canada *n* /'kænədə/  
check *v* /tʃek/  
chess *n* /tʃes/  
concert *n* /'kɒnsət/  
conversation *n* /kɒnvə'seɪʃn/  
do homework *v* /,du: 'həʊmwɜ:k/  
eye *n* /aɪ/  
fall in love *v* /,fə:l m 'lʌv/  
family *n* /'fæməli/  
feel *v* /fi:l/  
football *n* /'fʊtbɔ:l/  
genius *n* /'dʒi:niəs/  
hear *v* /hiə/  
her *pron* /hə:/  
his *pron* /hɪz/  
hour *n* /aʊə/  
house *n* /haʊs/  
initial *n* /'ɪnɪʃl/  
Italian *adj* /'ɪtæliən/  
Japanese *adj* /dʒæpə'ni:z/  
know *v* /nəʊ/  
large *adj* /la:dʒ/  
last month *adv* /la:st 'mʌnθ/  
laugh *v* /la:f/  
little *adj* /'lɪtl/  
manager *n* /'mænɪdʒə/  
message *n* /'mesɪdʒ/  
now *adv* /naʊ/  
our *pron* /aʊə/  
paint *v* /peɪnt/  
pianist *n* /'piənɪst/  
piano *n* /pi'ænəʊ/  
poetry *n* /'poətri/  
Portuguese *adj* /,pɔ:tʃo'gi:z/  
poor *adj* /po:/  
practise *v* /'præktaɪz/  
question *n* /'kwestʃən/  
really *adv* /ri:əli/  
require *v* /rɪ'kwaɪə/  
sad *adj* /sæd/  
save *v* /seɪv/  
sea *n* /si:/  
see *v* /si:/  
sell *v* /sel/  
Spanish *adj* /'spænɪʃ/  
spell *v* /spel/  
spelling *n* /'spelɪŋ/  
spend *v* /spend/  
style *n* /staɪl/  
sun *n* /sʌn/  
swim *v* /swɪm/  
their *pron* /ðeə/  
think *v* /θɪŋk/  
today *adv* /tə'deɪ/  
travel *v* /'trævl/

## Unit 7

advertising agency *n* /'ædvətəsɪŋ ,eɪdʒənsi/  
afraid *adj* /ə'freɪd/  
after that *adv* /,a:ftə 'ðæt/  
agree *v* /ə'grɪ:/  
army *n* /'a:mi/  
at night *adv* /ət 'naɪt/  
bath *n* /ba:θ/  
become *v* /bɪ'kʌm/  
begin *v* /bɪ'gɪn/  
birthday *n* /'bɜːθdeɪ/  
bomb *v* /bɒm/  
build *v* /bɪld/  
businessman *n* /'bɪznɪsmæn/  
buy *v* /baɪ/  
capital *adj* /'keɪpɪtl/  
car crash *n* /'ka: ,kræʃ/  
century *n* /'sentʃəri/  
chemistry *n* /'kemɪstri/  
child *n* /tʃaɪld/  
Christmas *n* /'krɪsməs/  
congratulations  
/kən,grætʃu'leʃnz/  
cotton field *n* /'kɒtn ,fi:ld/  
create *v* /kri'eɪt/  
die *v* /daɪ/  
dinner *n* /'dɪnə/  
earn *v* /ɜːn/  
Easter Day *n* /'i:stə ,deɪ/  
education *n* /edʒu'keɪʃn/  
end *v* /end/  
Euro *n* /'jʊərəʊ/  
event *n* /'vent/  
everybody *pron* /'evrɪbɒdi/  
farm *n* /fa:m/  
farmer *n* /fa:mə/  
fight *v* /fait/  
finally *adv* /'fainəli/  
first (... next) *adv* /fɜːst/  
funeral *n* /fju:nərəl/  
great grandparents *n pl*  
/greɪt 'grænpeərənts/  
grocer *n* /'graʊsə/  
grow *v* /grəʊ/  
Hallowe'en *n* /,hæləʊ'i:n/  
happen *v* /'hæpn/  
hate *v* /heɪt/  
have a holiday *v* /,hæv ə 'hɒlɪdeɪ/  
horse *n* /ho:s/  
immediately *adv* /ɪ'mi:dɪətlɪ/  
important *adj* /ɪm'po:tənt/  
independence *n* /ɪndɪ'pendəns/  
iron *adj* /'aɪən/  
kiss *v* /kɪs/  
later *adv* /leɪtə/  
leader *n* /'li:də/  
leave *v* /li:v/  
life *n* /laɪf/  
listen *v* /'lisn/  
little (money) /'lɪtl/  
look *v* /lʊk/  
lose *v* /lu:z/  
lucky *adj* /'lʌki/

marry *v* /'mæri/  
midnight *n* /'midnaɪt/  
million /'miljən/  
moon *n* /mu:n/  
Mother's Day *n* /'mʌðəz ,deɪ/  
need *v* /ni:d/  
New Year's Eve /,nju: ,jɪəz 'i:v/  
nineties *n pl* /'naɪnti:z/  
own *v* /əʊn/  
pardon? /'pa:dn/  
personality *n* /,pɜːsə'næləti/  
poem *n* /'peəm/  
politician *n* /,pɒlə'tɪʃn/  
politics *n* /'pɒlətɪks/  
present (= birthday) *n* /'preznt/  
president *n* /'prezɪdənt/  
prime minister *n*  
/praim 'minɪstə/  
problem *n* /'prɒbləm/  
read *v* /ri:d/  
remember *v* /rɪ'membə/  
resign *v* /'rɪzɪgn/  
same to you /'seɪm tə 'ju:/  
sit *v* /sɪt/  
slave *n* /sləv/  
sleep *v* /sli:p/  
soldier *n* /'səʊldʒə/  
soon *adv* /su:n/  
start *v* /sta:t/  
strong *adj* /strɒŋ/  
study *v* /'stʌdi/  
subject (school) *n* /'sʌbdʒekt/  
sure *adj* /ʃʊə/, /ʃɔ:/  
survive *v* /sə'veɪv/  
tear (+ cry) *n* /teə/  
terrorist *n* /'terərɪst/  
thank goodness /'θæŋk 'gʊdnes/  
Thanksgiving *n* /θaŋks'gɪvɪŋ/  
theatre *n* /'θɪətə/  
think *v* /θɪŋk/  
tobacco *n* /tə'bækəʊ/  
together *adv* /tə'geðə/  
tomorrow *adv* /tə'mɒrəʊ/  
twin *n* /twɪn/  
university *n* /ju:nɪ'vɪ:səti/  
Valentine's Day *n*  
/'væləntaɪn ,deɪ/  
video *n* /'vɪdiəʊ/  
war *n* /wɔ:/:  
wedding day *n* /'wedɪŋ ,deɪ/  
widow *n* /'wɪdəʊ/  
win *v* /wɪn/  
work hard *v* /,wɜːk 'ha:d/  
wrong *adj* /rɒŋ/

## Unit 8

(3 years) ago *adv* /ə'gəʊ/  
(coffee) break *n* /breɪk/  
arthritis *n* /ə:θ'rætɪs/  
aspirin *n* /'æsprɪn/  
astronaut *n* /'æstrənɔ:t/  
banana *n* /ba'na:nə/  
beach *n* /bi:tʃ/  
bestselling *adj* /'best'selɪŋ/  
blue *adj* /blu:/  
bottle *n* /'bɒtl/  
boy *n* /boɪ/  
chat *v* /tʃæt/  
chatline *n* /tʃætlайн/  
chicken *n* /tʃɪkɪn/  
clock *n* /klɒk/  
cloth *n* /klɒθ/  
company *n* /'kʌmpəni/  
couple *n pl* /'kʌpl/  
date *n* /deɪt/  
delicious *adj* /drɪlʃəs/  
drug *n* /drʌg/  
e-mail *n* /'i:meɪl/  
exam *n* /ɪg'zæm/  
face *n* /feɪs/  
face to face /'feɪs tə 'feɪs/  
fashionable *adj* /'fæʃnəbl/  
fax *n* /fæks/  
fisherman *n* /'fɪʃəmən/  
funny *adj* /'fʌni/  
get engaged *v* /,get ɪn'geɪdʒd/  
get married *v* /,get 'mærɪd/  
go to a party *v* /,gəʊ tu: ə 'pa:ti/  
good luck! /,gʊd 'lʌk/  
green *adj* /gri:n/  
in a hurry /,ɪn ə 'hʌri/  
incredible *adj* /m'kredəbl/  
internet *n* /'ɪntənet/  
invention *n* /ɪn'venʃn/  
jeans *n pl* /dʒi:nz/  
joke *n* /dʒo:k/  
leg *n* /leg/  
mobile phone *n* /'məʊbaɪl 'fəʊn/  
moon *n* /mu:n/  
mouth *n* /maʊθ/  
nervous *adj* /'nɜːvəs/  
nowadays *adv* /'naʊədeɪz/  
painkiller *n* /'peɪnkɪlə/  
philosopher *n* /fɪ'ləsəfə/  
phone call *n* /'fəʊn ,ko:l/  
produce *v* /prə'dju:s/  
public holiday *n*  
/'pʌblɪk 'hɒlɪdeɪ/  
recipe *n* /'resəpi/  
record (for music) *n* /'reko:d/  
ride *v* /raɪd/  
rose *n* /rəʊz/  
send *v* /send/

## Unit 9

a bit *n* /ə 'bit/  
all sorts *n pl* /'ɔ:l 'so:ts/  
anybody *pron* /'enibodi/  
anyway *adv* /'eniwei/  
apple juice *n* /'æpl ,dʒu:s/  
away from *adv* /ə'wei frəm/  
bacon *n* /'beɪkən/  
bag *n* /ba:g/  
bar of chocolate *n*  
/ba:(r) əv 'tʃɒkət/  
beer *n* /bi:r/  
birthday *n* /'bɜ:θdei/  
biscuit *n* /'bɪskɪt/  
black (coffee) *adj* /blæk/  
borrow *v* /'bɒrəʊ/  
bottle *n* /'bɒtl/  
bread *n* /bred/  
carrot *n* /'kærət/  
central *adj* /'sentrəl/  
cheese *n* /tʃi:z/  
China *n* /tʃa:mə/  
Chinese *adj* /tʃar'ni:z/  
chopsticks *n pl* /'tʃɒpstɪks/  
cigarette *n* /sɪgə'ret/  
control *v* /kən'trəul/  
course (of a meal) *n* /kɔ:s/  
curry *n* /'kari/  
dangerous *adj* /'deɪndʒərəs/  
depend *v* /dr'pend/  
dessert *n* /di'zɜ:t/  
disgusting *adj* /dɪs'gʌstɪŋ/  
easily *adv* /'i:zəli/  
egg *n* /eg/  
either *adv* /'aɪðə/  
environment *n* /in'veɪrənmənt/  
especially /'speʃəli/  
farm *v* /fa:m/  
finger *n* /'fɪngə/  
fish *n* /fi:/  
fizzy water *n* /'fizi 'wo:tə/  
for example /,fɔ:(r) ɪg'zɑ:mpl/  
foreign *adj* /'fɔ:gn/  
fruit *n* /fru:t/  
full *adj* /fʊl/  
glad *adj* /glæd/  
ham *n* /hæm/  
herring *n* /'herɪŋ/  
history *n* /'histəri/  
horrible *adj* /'hɒrəbl/  
human *adj* /'hju:mən/  
hungry *adj* /'haŋgrɪ/  
land *n* /lænd/  
main (meal) *adj* /mem/  
meal *n* /mi:l/  
meat *n* /mi:t/  
milk *n* /mɪlk/  
money *n* /'mʌni/  
mushroom *n* /'maʃrəʊm/  
noodles *n pl* /nu:dłz/  
north *n* /nɔ:θ/

part (of the world) *n* /pa:t/  
pass (= give) *v* /pa:s/  
pasta *n* /'pæstə/  
pea *n* /pi:/  
petrol *n* /'petrəl/  
pick up *v* /,pik 'ʌp/  
pocket *n* /'pɒkit/  
poor *adj* /puə/, /po:/  
possible *adj* /'pɒsəbl/  
potatoes *n pl* /po'tetəʊz/  
rice *n* /raɪs/  
right now *adv* /,raɪt 'naʊ/  
salt *n* /sɔ:lt/, /sɒlt/  
sardine *n* /sa:dɪ:n/  
sauce *n* /sɔ:s/  
sausages *n pl* /'sɒsɪdʒɪz/  
shopping list *n* /'ʃɒpɪŋ ,lɪst/  
south *n* /saʊθ/  
still water *n* /'stɪl 'wɔ:tə/  
strawberry *n* /'strə:bəri/  
sugar *n* /'ʃʊgə/  
table *n* /'terbl/  
terrible *adj* /'terəbl/  
toast *n* /təʊst/  
together *adv* /tə'geðə/  
tomato *n* /tə'ma:təʊ/  
transport *v* /træn'spo:t/  
typical *adj* /'tɪpɪkl/  
vegetable *n* /'vedʒəbl/  
washing-up *n* /,wɒʃɪŋ 'ʌp/  
wonderful *adj* /'wʌndəfʊl/  
yoghurt *n* /'jɒgət/

## Unit 10

art *n* /a:t/  
blues (music) *n pl* /blu:z/  
bridge *n* /brɪdʒ/  
building *n* /'bɪldɪŋ/  
busy *adj* /'bɪzi/  
car park *n* /'ka:,pa:k/  
carnival *n* /'ka:nɪvl/  
castle *n* /'ka:sl/  
cathedral *n* /kə'θi:drəl/  
church *n* /tʃɜ:tʃ/  
clean *adj* /kli:n/  
cosmopolitan *adj*  
/kɒzmə'polɪtn/  
cottage *n* /'kɒtɪdʒ/  
country (not the city) *n* /'kʌntri/  
cousin *n* /'kʌzən/  
cultural centre *n*  
/'kʌltʃərəl ,sentrə/  
dangerous *adj* /deɪndʒərəs/  
dirty *adj* /dɜ:tɪ/  
empire *n* /'emپری/  
expensive *adj* /ɪk'spensɪv/  
factory *n* /'fæktri/  
field *n* /fi:ld/  
found (a university) *v* /faʊnd/  
garage *n* /'gærɪdʒ/, /'gærə:ʒ/  
garden *n* /'ga:dn/  
gateway *n* /'geɪtweɪ/  
group *n* /gru:p/  
hedge *n* /hedʒ/  
hill *n* /hil/  
hotel *n* /həʊ'tel/  
hymn *n* /him/  
immigrants *n pl* /'ɪmigrənts/  
intelligent *adj* /ɪn'telɪdʒənt/  
library *n* /laibrəri/  
mixture *n* /mɪkstʃə/  
mountain *n* /maʊntn/  
museum *n* /mjュー'ziəm/  
night club *n* /'naɪt ,kləb/  
noisy *adj* /'noɪzi/  
orchestra *n* /'ɔ:kistrə/  
passenger *n* /'pæsɪndʒə/  
popular *adj* /'pɒpjʊlə/  
port *n* /po:t/  
pretty *adj* /'prɪti/  
quiet *adj* /'kwaɪət/  
restaurant *n* /'restɔ:nt/  
river bank *n* /'rɪvə bænk/  
rock group *n* /'rɒk ,gru:p/  
safe *adj* /seif/  
ship *n* /ʃɪp/  
small *adj* /smɔ:l/  
song *n* /sɒŋ/  
spices *n pl* /'spɪsɪz/  
stand *v* /stænd/  
street *n* /stri:t/  
tall *adj* /tɔ:l/

the Underground *n*  
/ði 'ʌndəgraʊnd/

top ten (music) *n* /,tɒp 'ten/  
travel *n* /'trævl/  
unfriendly *adj* /ʌnf'rendlɪ/  
village *n* /'vilɪdʒ/  
wood *n* /wʊd/

## Unit 11

baby *n* /'berbi/ baseball cap *n* /'beisbɔ:l, kæp/ beautiful *adj* /'bju:tfl/ bloom *v* /blu:m/ boot *n* /bu:t/ bright *adj* /brait/ changing rooms *n pl* /'tʃeindʒɪŋ ,ru:mz/ chewing gum *n* /'tju:m, gʌm/ choose *v* /tʃu:z/ cigar *n* /sɪ'ga:/ cloud *n* /klaud/ coat *n* /kəʊt/ credit card *n* /'kredit, ka:d/ cry *v* /kraɪ/ dark *adj* /da:k/ dress *n* /dres/ eat *v* /i:t/ fair (hair) *adj* /feə/ fresh *adj* /freʃ/ good-looking *adj* /,god'lɔkɪŋ/ grey *adj* /greɪ/ guest *n* /gest/ hair *n* /heə/ half *n* /ha:f/ handsome *adj* /'hænsəm/ hat *n* /hæt/ hill *n* /hil/ jacket *n* /dʒækɪt/ jumper *n* /'dʒʌmpə/ laugh *v* /la:f/ long *adj* /lɒŋ/ musician *n* /mjュー:zɪʃn/ pay *v* /peri/ pram *n* /præm/ rainbow *n* /reɪnbəʊ/ roller skates *n pl* /'rəʊlə ,skeɪts/ run *v* /rʌn/ shake *v* /jeɪk/ shiny *adj* /'fami/ shirt *n* /ʃɜ:t/ shoe *n* /ʃu:/ short *adj* /ʃɔ:t/ shorts *n pl* /ʃɔ:ts/ silly *adj* /'sili/ size *n* /saɪz/ skateboard *n* /'skeɪtbo:d/ skirt *n* /skɜ:t/ sky *n* /skai/ smile *v* /smail/ smoke *v* /sməʊk/ sports car *n* /'spo:ts, ka:/ starry *adj* /'sta:ri/ suit *n* /su:t/ sunglasses *n pl* /'sængla:sɪz/ T-shirt *n* /'ti:ʃɜ:t/ talk *v* /tɔ:k/ trainers *n pl* /'treɪnəz/ try on *v* /,trai 'ɒn/ umbrella *n* /ʌm'brelə/ whose? *pron* /hu:z/

## Unit 12

accident *n* /'ækseɪdənt/ adventure *n* /ə'dventʃə/ amazed *adj* /ə'meɪzd/ blouse *n* /blaʊz/ championship *n* /'tʃæmpɪənʃɪp/ cloudy *adj* /'klaudi/ coast *n* /kəʊst/ cool *adj* /ku:l/ corner *n* /'kɔ:nə/ degrees *n pl* /dɪ'grɪ:z/ driving school *n* /'draɪvɪŋ ,sku:l/ dry *adj* /draɪ/ excitement *n* /ɪk'saitmənt/ feel sick *v* /fi:l 'sɪk/ float *v* /fləʊt/ foggy *adj* /'fɒgi/ forever *adv* /fɔ:r'eva/ forget *v* /fə'get/ fresh air *n* /fref 'eə/ full-time *adj* /,fʊl'taɪm/ garden shed *n* /gɑ:dn 'sed/ golf *n* /gɔlf/ grow up *v* /,grəʊ 'ʌp/ lion *n* /'laɪən/ motor racing *n* /'məʊtə ,reɪsɪŋ/ nervous *adj* /'nɜ:vəs/ parachute *n* /'pærəʃu:t/ pyramid *n* /'pɪrəmid/ race *v* /reɪs/ racing circuit *n* /'reɪsɪŋ ,sɜ:kit/ racing driver *n* /'reɪsɪŋ ,drarvə/ record *n* /'rekɔ:d/ retire *v* /ri'taɪə/ safe *adj* /seif/ sky diving *n* /'skai ,daɪvɪŋ/ sneeze *v* /sni:z/ star (TV) *n* /sta:/ sunbathe *v* /'sʌnbɛθ/ swimming costume *n* /'swimɪŋ ,kɒstju:m/ top marks *n pl* /'tɒp 'ma:ks/ trouble *n* /'trʌbl/ tulip *n* /'tju:lip/ view *n* /vju:/ weather *n* /'weðə/ windsurfing *n* /'wɪndzɜ:fɪŋ/ windy *adj* /'windi/

## Unit 13

annoyed *adj* /ə'noɪd/  
arrive *v* /ə'raɪv/  
badly *adv* /'bædli/  
behave *v* /bɪ'hɛv/  
behaviour *n* /bɪ'hɛvɪə/  
burglar *n* /'bɜːglə/  
carefully *adv* /'keəfəlɪ/  
change (= money) *n* /tʃeɪndʒ/  
depart *v* /dr'pa:t/  
elephant *n* /elfənt/  
explain *v* /ɪk'spleɪn/  
fast *adv* /fa:st/  
fluently *adv* /'flu:əntli/  
fortunately *adv* /'fɔ:tʃnətlɪ/  
generation *n* /dʒenə'reɪʃn/  
gold medal *n* /'gəʊld 'medl/  
grass *n* /gra:s/  
guitar *n* /gi'tr:/  
leather *n* /'leðə/  
marathon *n* /mærəθən/  
migrate *v* /maɪ'grreɪt/  
moon *n* /mu:n/  
pin *v* /pɪn/  
platform *n* /'plætfɔ:m/  
please *v* /pli:z/  
quietly *adv* /'kwaiətlɪ/  
return ticket *n* /rɪ'tɪ:k 'tɪkɪt/  
ridiculous *adj* /rɪ'dɪkjələs/  
rude *adj* /ru:d/  
sheep *n* /ʃi:p/  
shout *v* /ʃaʊt/  
slowly *adv* /'sləʊli/  
station *n* /'steɪʃn/  
support (a team) *v* /sə'pɔ:t/  
tell a lie *v* /tel ə 'laɪ/  
timetable *n* /'taɪmteɪbl/  
typical *adj* /'trɪpɪkl/  
untidy *adj* /ʌn'taɪdi/  
weigh *v* /wei/  
well-behaved *adj* /,wel bɪ'hervd/  
whistle *v* /'wɪsl/  
wolf *n* /wʊlf/  
worrying *adj* /'wɔːriŋ/

## Unit 14

abroad *adv* /ə'b्रɔ:d/  
airport *n* /'eəpɔ:t/  
ambulance driver *n* /'æmbjələns ,draɪvə/  
announcement *n* /ə'nəʊnmənt/  
arrival hall *n* /ə'rərvl ,hɔ:l/  
board *v* /bɔ:d/  
boarding pass *n* /'bɔ:dɪŋ ,pa:s/  
boat ride *n* /'bəʊt, rāɪd/  
business class *n* /'bɪznəs ,kla:s/  
call *n* /kɔ:l/  
certificate *n* /sə'tifikət/  
check in *v* /tʃek 'ɪn/  
check-in desk *n* /tʃek in ,desk/  
competition *n* /kɒmpə'tɪʃn/  
crown *n* /kraʊn/  
dawn *n* /dɔ:n/  
delay *v* /dr'leɪ/  
delayed *pp* /dr'leɪd/  
departures board *n* /dr'pa:tʃəz ,bɔ:d/  
departure lounge *n* /dr'pa:tʃəz ,laʊndʒ/  
double-decker bus *n* /,dʌbl ,dekkər 'bʌs/  
dressmaker *n* /'dresmeɪkə/  
engineer *n* /,endʒɪ'nɪə/  
flag *n* /flæg/  
flight *n* /flait/  
gate (in an airport) *n* /geɪt/  
give up (= stop) *v* /,gɪv 'ʌp/  
grandson *n* /'græn,dson/  
Greece *n* /gri:s/  
heart attack *n* /'ha:t ə,tæk/  
honeymoon *n* /'hənɪmu:n/  
horn (on a car) *n* /hɔ:n/  
Hungary *n* /'hʌŋgəri/  
jewels *n pl* /'dʒu:əlz/  
jumbo jet *n* /'dʒʌmbəju: 'dʒet/  
jump *v* /dʒʌmp/  
last call *n* /la:st 'kɔ:l/  
let (sb) down (= disappoint) *v* /let 'daʊn/  
lottery *n* /'lɒtəri/  
loud *adj* /laʊd/  
luggage *n* /'lʌgɪdʒ/  
lung cancer *n* /'lʌŋ ,kænsə/  
marmalade *n* /'ma:məleɪd/  
millionaire *n* /,miljə'neɪ/  
miss *v* /mis/  
niece *n* /ni:s/  
now boarding /,naʊ ˈbɔ:dɪŋ/  
pack (a bag) *v* /pæk/  
passenger *n* /'pæsɪndʒə/  
passport control /'pa:sɒ:t kən'trəʊl/  
pipe (to smoke) *n* /paɪp/  
pneumonia *n* /nju:'məʊniə/  
remind *v* /rɪ'maɪnd/  
rheumatic fever *n* /ru:'mætɪk 'fi:və/

seat *n* /si:t/  
secretary *n* /'sekretəri/  
serious *adj* /'sɪəriəs/  
suitcase *n* /su:tkeɪs/  
tractor *n* /'træktrə/  
trolley *n* /'trɒli/

## Appendix 1

### IRREGULAR VERBS

Base form	Past Simple	Past Participle
be	was/were	been
become	became	become
begin	began	begun
break	broke	broken
bring	brought	brought
build	built	built
buy	bought	bought
can	could	been able
catch	caught	caught
choose	chose	chosen
come	came	come
cost	cost	cost
cut	cut	cut
do	did	done
drink	drank	drunk
drive	drove	driven
eat	ate	eaten
fall	fell	fallen
feel	felt	felt
fight	fought	fought
find	found	found
fly	flew	flown
forget	forgot	forgotten
get	got	got
give	gave	given
go	went	gone/been
grow	grew	grown
have	had	had
hear	heard	heard
hit	hit	hit
keep	kept	kept
know	knew	known
learn	learnt/learned	learnt/learned
leave	left	left
lose	lost	lost
make	made	made
meet	met	met
pay	paid	paid
put	put	put
read /ri:d/	read /red/	read /red/
ride	rode	ridden
run	ran	run
say	said	said
see	saw	seen
sell	sold	sold
send	sent	sent
shut	shut	shut
sing	sang	sung
sit	sat	sat
sleep	slept	slept
speak	spoke	spoken
spend	spent	spent
stand	stood	stood
steal	stole	stolen
swim	swam	swum
take	took	taken
tell	told	told
think	thought	thought
understand	understood	understood
wake	woke	woken
wear	wore	worn
win	won	won
write	wrote	written

## Appendix 2

### VERB PATTERNS

Verb + -ing	
like	
love	swimming
enjoy	
hate	
finish	cooking
stop	

Verb + to + infinitive	
choose	
decide	
forget	
promise	to go
need	
help	
hope	
try	
want	
would like	
would love	to work

Verb + -ing or to + infinitive	
begin	raining/to rain
start	

Modal auxiliary verbs	
can	go
could	
shall	
will	arrive
would	

# Phonetic symbols

The 200+ hours of spoken English used to make this dictionary are now available online at [oxfordenglish.com](http://oxfordenglish.com)

## Consonants

1	/p/	as in	<b>pen</b> /pen/
2	/b/	as in	<b>big</b> /big/
3	/t/	as in	<b>tea</b> /ti:/
4	/d/	as in	<b>do</b> /du:/
5	/k/	as in	<b>cat</b> /kæt/
6	/g/	as in	<b>go</b> /gəʊ/
7	/f/	as in	<b>four</b> /fɔ:/
8	/v/	as in	<b>very</b> /'veri/
9	/s/	as in	<b>son</b> /sən/
10	/z/	as in	<b>zoo</b> /zu:/
11	/l/	as in	<b>live</b> /lɪv/
12	/m/	as in	<b>my</b> /mai/
13	/n/	as in	<b>near</b> /nɪə/
14	/h/	as in	<b>happy</b> /'hæpi/
15	/r/	as in	<b>red</b> /red/
16	/j/	as in	<b>yes</b> /jes/
17	/w/	as in	<b>want</b> /wɒnt/
18	/θ/	as in	<b>thanks</b> /θæŋks/
19	/ð/	as in	<b>the</b> /ðə/
20	/ʃ/	as in	<b>she</b> /ʃi:/
21	/ʒ/	as in	<b>television</b> /'telɪvɪʒn/
22	/tʃ/	as in	<b>child</b> /tʃaɪld/
23	/dʒ/	as in	<b>German</b> /'dʒə:mən/
24	/ŋ/	as in	<b>English</b> /'ɪŋglɪʃ/

## Vowels

25	/i:/	as in	<b>see</b> /si:/
26	/ɪ/	as in	<b>his</b> /hɪz/
27	/i/	as in	<b>twenty</b> /'twenti/
28	/e/	as in	<b>ten</b> /ten/
29	/æ/	as in	<b>stamp</b> /stæmp/
30	/ɑ:/	as in	<b>father</b> /'fa:ðə/
31	/ɒ/	as in	<b>hot</b> /hɒt/
32	/ɔ:/	as in	<b>morning</b> /'mɔ:nɪŋ/
33	/ʊ/	as in	<b>football</b> /'fʊtbɔ:l/
34	/u:/	as in	<b>you</b> /ju:/
35	/ʌ/	as in	<b>sun</b> /sʌn/
36	/ɜ:/	as in	<b>learn</b> /lɜ:n/
37	/ə/	as in	<b>letter</b> /'letə/

## Diphthongs (two vowels together)

38	/eɪ/	as in	<b>name</b> /neɪm/
39	/əʊ/	as in	<b>no</b> /nəʊ/
40	/aɪ/	as in	<b>my</b> /mai/
41	/aʊ/	as in	<b>how</b> /haʊ/
42	/ɔɪ/	as in	<b>boy</b> /bɔɪ/
43	/ɪə/	as in	<b>hear</b> /hiə/
44	/eə/	as in	<b>where</b> /weə/
45	/ʊə/	as in	<b>tour</b> /tuə/

# OXFORD

UNIVERSITY PRESS

Great Clarendon Street, Oxford OX2 6DP

Oxford University Press is a department of the University of Oxford. It furthers the University's objective of excellence in research, scholarship, and education by publishing worldwide in

Oxford New York

Auckland Bangkok Buenos Aires Cape Town  
Chennai Dar es Salaam Delhi Hong Kong Istanbul  
Karachi Kolkata Kuala Lumpur Madrid Melbourne  
Mexico City Mumbai Nairobi São Paulo Shanghai  
Taipei Tokyo Toronto

Oxford and Oxford English are registered trade marks of Oxford University Press in the UK and in certain other countries

© Oxford University Press 2000

The moral rights of the author have been asserted

Database right Oxford University Press (maker)

First published 2000

Thirteenth impression 2004

No unauthorized photocopying

All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted, in any form or by any means, without the prior permission in writing of Oxford University Press, or as expressly permitted by law, or under terms agreed with the appropriate reprographics rights organization. Enquiries concerning reproduction outside the scope of the above should be sent to the ELT Rights Department, Oxford University Press, at the address above

You must not circulate this book in any other binding or cover and you must impose this same condition on any acquirer

Any web sites referred to in this publication are in the public domain and their addresses are provided by Oxford University Press for information only. Oxford University Press disclaims and responsibility for the content

ISBN 0 19 436677 4 International Edition

ISBN 0 19 437875 6 German Edition

Bestellnummer 118 258

Printed in Hong Kong

## Acknowledgements

The authors and publisher are grateful to those who have given permission to reproduce the following extracts and adaptations of copyright material:

p24 'It's a job for nine men, but someone's got to do it' by Rebecca Fowler. *The Mail Night and Day Magazine* 3 May 1998. © *The Mail on Sunday*.

p40 'The jet settler' by Andy Lines. *The Mirror, Cover Magazine* March 1999. © Mirror Group Newspapers.

p48 'Refugee's daughter hailed as new Picasso' by Nigel Reynolds. *The Daily Telegraph* 12 March 1996. © Telegraph Group Ltd.

p48 'Shy 10-year-old piano prodigy' by David Ward. *The Guardian* 23 September 1997. © *The Guardian*.

p87 'What a wonderful world'. Words and Music by George David Weiss and George Douglas © 1967 Range Road Music, Inc., Quartet Music, Inc. and Abilene Music, Inc., USA. - Copyright Renewed - All Rights Reserved. 50% Lyric reproduction by kind permission of Carlin Music Corporation, 50% by kind permission of

Memory Lane Music Limited.

p102 'The Story-Teller' from *Tooth and Claw* (Oxford Bookworms Series) by Rosemary Border.

p110 'Discover the secrets of a long life' by Katy Macdonald. *The Daily Mail* 2 November 1993. © *The Daily Mail*.

p112 'Leaving on a jet plane' by John Denver © 1967, Cherry Lane Music Limited, c/o Harmony Music Limited, 11 Uxbridge Street, London W8 7TQ.

**Every endeavour has been made to identify the sources of all material used. The publisher apologises for any omissions.**

### Illustrations by:

Kathy Baxendale pp17, 96; Rowie Christopher pp45, 86-87, 98-99; Martin Cottam pp103, 104; Neil Gower pp43, 81; Jane Hadfield p66; John Holder pp102-3, 104; Sarah Jones pp11, 65; Ian Kellas pp31, 32, 44, 69, 76, 84-5, 92, 97, 100; Andy Parker p84; Pierre Paul Pariséau pp96-7; Debbie Ryder p80; Colin Salmon p40; Harry Venning pp6, 16, 34, 39, 62, 77, 81, 85, 88, 98, 99, 101

### The publishers would like to thank the following for their kind permission to reproduce photographs:

**AKG Photos** pp47 (Mozart), 62 (Levi Strauss), 79 (Eric Lessing/Vienna Opera House); **Associated Press** pp42 (Susan Sternier/beach), 59 (Big Ben), 74; **Barnabys Picture Library** pp20 (doctor), 26 (nurse), 32 (autumn), 108 (Stuart D Hall/Brad & Marilyn); **Bayer** p62 (Hoffman & Aspirin bottle), **John Birdsill Photography** pp12, 51 (black woman on phone), 82 (Nadia & Rudi), 83 (Flora & Toni); **Catherine Blackie** p110 (Tommy young, Joyce young and old); **Anthony Blake Photo Library** pp26 (John Sims/barman), 71 (John Sims/bananas), 72 (Sian Irving/pasta, Andrew Sydenham/chocolate cakes, Gerrit Buntrock/bacon & eggs); **Bridgeman Art Library** pp56 (The Hall of Representatives/The Signing of the Constitution of the United States in 1787, 1940 by Howard Chandler Christy), 57 (Pennsylvania Academy of Fine Arts, Philadelphia/George Washington at Princeton by Charles Willson Peale 1741-1827), 79 (Coram Foundation/Handel's Messiah); **Camera Press** pp55 (Mark Stewart/flowers), 56 (M Thatcher & family, Jon Blau/M Thatcher at conference), 61 (cars); **Collections** pp26 (Brian Shuel/shopkeeper, Nick Oakes/architect), 110 (old Tommy), 111 (Anthea Sieveking/Alice old); **Corbis Images** pp47 (Einstein), 53 (cotton picking), 62 (JL Baird); **Corbis Sygma** pp26 (Mathew/Journalist), 55 (R Ellis/Clinton & Blair), 57 (M Polak/M Thatcher resignation), 82 (Ruth, Cathy & Jane); **Zoe Dominic** p47 (Nureyev); **European Commission** p26 (interpreter); **Format Photographers** pp11 (Joanne O'Brien/Leo), 83 (Ulrike Preuss/Becca); **Greg Evans International** pp42 (Greg Balfour Evans/Alise), 58 (Greg Balfour Evans/Easter Eggs), 112 (Greg Balfour Evans/plane); **Food Features** p72 (Indian curry); **Getty One Stone** pp7 (John Riley/Max & Lisa), 16-17 (Joseph Pobereskin/Central Park), 25 (David Tomlinson), 32 (Manuela, Chad Ehlers/beach), 33 (Bruce Ayres/Toshi, cherry blossom, Rich Iwasaki/maple trees), 42 (Dennis McColeman/Toronto), 55 (P Crowther & S Carter/Euro Symbol), 58 (Bob Thomas/wedding), 58 (Bruce Ayres/Thanksgiving, James Randklev/Christmas tree), 59 (Andrew Olney/girl & cake), 64 (Phil Schofield/fisherman, Martin Rogers/man & laptop, Walter Hodges/girl on computer, Michelangelo Gratton/girl on beach), 64-5 (Mark Andrew/message in bottle), 71 (Wayne as step/Shammar tribe eating, Yann Lavma/China woman & child, David Baird/strawberry crates), 72 (Martin Barraud/Sally), 73 (Timothy Shonnard), 79 (ferry), 83 (Ian

O'Leary/businessman), 86-7 (baby), 93 (Suzanne & Nick Geary/tulips), 93 (safari, Donald

Nausbaum/Copacabana Beach, John Lamb/Red Square), 108 (Paul Figura/Ryan); **Sue Glass** p95 (Sue Glass racing & portrait); **The Guardian** p48-9 (Don McPhee/Lukas Vondracek); **Robert Harding Picture Library** pp8 (P Bouchon/Maria), 26 (pilot, Ken Gilham/postman), 32 (Norma Joseph/Al Wheeler), 42 (J Lightfoot/Lisbon, Int Stock/Ray & Elsie), 51 (teenager on phone), 54 (Bob Jacobson/Simon), 59 (Mark Mawson/pumpkin), 72 (Rex Rouchon/Lucy), 76 (Norma Joseph/Plaza), 83 (Tony Demi/Angela, David Hughes/Juan), 93 (pyramids, Taj Mahal); **Hulton Getty Picture Collection** pp47 (Picasso), 52 (Cotton picking), 56 (G. W. as farmer), 60 (jeans), 61 (phone calls, television); **Image Bank** pp8 (Juan Silva/Lena & Miguel), 11 (Stephen Derr/Mary), 61 (Archive Photos/hamburgers); **Impact Photos** pp21 (Andy Johnstone/barman), 51 (Giles Barnard/female bank worker), 59 (Simon Shepherd/Valentines Day); **Insight** pp24-25; **Katz** pp60 (Mansell/planes), 71 (Benoit Decout/restaurants Lyon); **Sally Lack** p111 (Alice); **The Mandarin Hotel** p76; **Network Photographers** pp8 (Pierre), 20 (Peter Jordan/Scientist), 51 (Homer Sykes/man on phone); **Pictures** p72 (Chinese food); **Popperfoto** pp15 (M.C.C./family at dinner table), 55 (Bob Thomas/World Cup), 60 (Coca Cola, records, photograph), 61 (bikes); **Clem Quinn** p95 (Clem Quinn skydiving & portrait); **Quadrant Picture Library** p113; **Redferns** pp78 (David Redfern), 86; **Henry Reichhold** pp108-9; **Rex Features** pp40-1, 48-9 (Di Crollalanza/Alexandra Nechita); **The Savoy Group** p76 (Claridges); **The Stock Market** pp8 (Anna), 75, 93 (K Owaki/canyon and Mt Fuji), 93 (Great Wall, dancer), 94 (skydivers); **Telegraph Colour Library** pp11 (Benelux Press/Flora), 52 (Colorific/woman on verandah); **Topham Picturepoint** pp71 (Japanese restaurant), 79 (Beatles); **Trip Photo Library** pp7 (E James/Rafael, M Fairman/Tomoko), 8 (B North/Yasima, D Morgan/Irina, A Tovy/László & Ilona), 9 (E James), 11 (M Stevenson/Edward), 15 (Japanese family, S Grant/Mixed race family, B Seed/Portuguese family), 22, 23, 26 (S Grant/accountant), 39 (P Treanor/Pierre), 42 (D Cole/Samoan house, Mike Clement/Manola, N Menneer/Brad), 45 (H Rogers/Tina), 51 (H Rogers/woman in T shirt), 51 (Grant/man in office), 70 (H Rogers/S. Indian children), 71 (F Good/rice harvest, H Rogers/ship), 72 (Andrews/Gavin, H Rogers/Graham and Lucy)

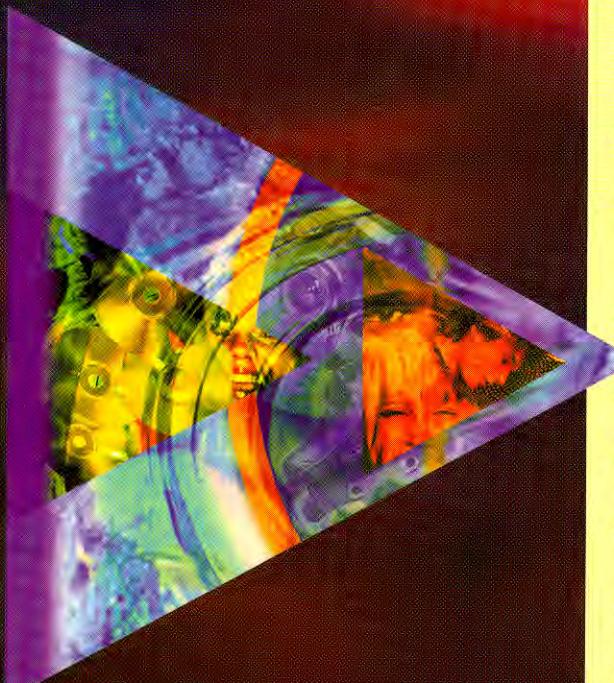
### Commissioned photography by:

**Gareth Boden:** pp6, 7 (school), 8 (Richard/Kurt), 11 (Bianca), 35, 67 (school dinners), 75; **Haddon Davies:** pp37, 67 (biscuits), 89, 105; **Mark Mason:**

pp10, 18, 27, 68; **Maggie Milner:** pp14, 19, 46; **Stephen Ogilvy:** p17

### We would like to thank the following for their assistance:

Bell Language School, British Telecom plc, Gabucci, Leventhorpe School, Photosound



**New Headway English Course** is a development of the highly successful multi-level *Headway* series. The original coursebooks have been rewritten to include new features, activities, and, above all, new material to make the learning of English stimulating and motivating for both adult and young adult learners. The course combines the best of traditional methods with more recent approaches to help students use English accurately and fluently, and provides a fully comprehensive language teaching series from beginner to advanced.

*New Headway Elementary* can be used by both true and false beginners. It provides a foundation in the structure of the language, gradually building students' understanding of the basic grammar, vocabulary, and functions of English.

#### **Key features**

- **Fresh, modern design**, which makes activities easy to follow.
- **New, universal topics** selected from a wide variety of material.
- **In-depth treatment of grammar**, with clear presentations, self-check exercises in the *Grammar Spot*, and detailed explanation in the *Grammar Reference*, followed by extensive practice activities.
- **Systematic vocabulary syllabus**, including dictionary training, and work on systems such as collocation.
- **Pronunciation work**, which is integrated at appropriate points.
- **Integrated skills work**, where all four skills are developed in context.
- **Everyday English section**, which practises functional language and social situations.

In addition, there is a Teacher's Book with extra photocopiable material, a photocopiable Teacher's Resource Book, two Class Cassettes / CDs, a Workbook, and an optional Student's Workbook Cassette / CD. The level is supplemented by *Headway Elementary Video* and *Headway Elementary Pronunciation*.

Liz and John Soars have many years of experience as teachers and teacher trainers. They are best known for their creation of the *Headway* series, which has won international acclaim and has redefined standards for English language coursebooks.

**OXFORD**  
UNIVERSITY PRESS

OXFORD ENGLISH